New Edition

Korean Grammar for International Learners

by

Ihm, Ho Bin
Hong, Kyung Pyo
Chang, Suk In

Yonsei University Press
Authors’ Preface

More than thirteen years have passed since the year 1987, when, in a modest effort to decorate our world village, we planted a little tree with the title *Korean Grammar I, II* ([한국어 문법 I, II]). Since then the world has grown yet smaller and closer, and we find people from many different countries striving to understand each other’s history and culture, and in many cases even living together in harmony and warm affection.

We also find now many language learners who, in order to achieve mutual understanding, show a love and respect for their counterparts’ languages which are no less than the love and respect they hold for their own mother tongue. In particular, the enthusiasm of those in every nook and cranny of the globe who wish to learn Korean continues to grow, and we are certain that all these people speaking, learning and teaching Korean will derive indescribably great joy from their endeavours. It is in this sense that the authors are convinced that the reappearance of this book, in a newer, more matured, and English-language version, will bring happiness to many besides the authors alone.

We have designed this book so as to be a useful reference tool for beginning and advanced learners alike. Moreover, our book has the useful feature of a dictionary–or textbook–like design for ease of use by the learner.

In this revised edition, we have tried to exclude all archaic and dialect patterns, and to incorporate any and all grammatical items which are essential and/or important for the learner to master. We have also paid special attention to the question of presentation, sequencing and indexing so as to make searching easier for the user. Another new feature of this edition is that we have included the practice exercises in a separate,
supplementary volume.

The authors have planted this sapling called *Korean Grammar* on the basis of the experience and enthusiasm gained over the course of more than thirty years in the classroom. But this young tree has not grown by dint of the authors' care and attention alone. We wish to acknowledge that each and every branch and leaf of this tree owes its growth to the nourishment provided in the form of encouragement and criticism from many individuals. We will never forget our debt of gratitude to those who, in the course of using these materials in earlier versions, have pointed out problems and mistakes to us.

We are grateful to [name] for her hard work in the process of correcting and proofing the final version of the book. We are also grateful to the Yonsei University Press for agreeing to publish the book.

Last but not least, we hope that this grammar book will become a friend and companion for all those learning Korean in our global village, and that in future, the single-minded devotion of the authors and the dedicated commitment of our readers will combine to produce even better versions of this book.

May 30, 2001

The authors

---

**Translator’s Preface**

It is with a sense of great embarrassment and shame that I realize over three years have passed since I agreed to undertake the translation of *Korean Grammar*. I felt compelled to take on the project for a number of reasons — out of a sense of responsibility to a young field like ours with so few readily available reference works; out of a sense of admiration and respect for the book and its capable authors, all three seasoned experts in Korean language education from one of the field’s most prestigious institutions; and out of a desire to learn more myself.

Translating the work of others in one’s own field is no easy task. One is tempted to cut here, nip there, amend this, fix that, and in general slip in or cut out tidbits of information based on one’s own training, biases, knowledge and ignorance. Certainly I am guilty of this type of editorial arrogance in numerous places, but I console myself with the reminder that the authors gave me considerable license to produce an English-language work that would be most effective for English-speaking students of Korean.

It has been my assumption throughout the project that the reader of this volume is a highly motivated learner of Korean, and one who already has some competence in the language. Thus, I have tried to make my translations of example sentences as colloquial as I can. In cases where a colloquial translation seemed to stray too far from the literal sense of an example (and especially in cases where it did so at the expense of elucidation of the grammatical feature being highlighted), I have also included, in parentheses, a more literal rendition.

The original Korean-language version of this book appears to have been targeted more at would-be teachers of Korean to foreign learners
than to foreign learners themselves. Thus, there is a great deal of traditional grammatical terminology, and many of the explanations for individual particles and endings incorporate rather dry, 'linguisticky' prose to describe how these structural pieces function. In my translation, I have tried at least to minimize the use of grammatical terminology and prose descriptions of grammar in the exposition of particles and endings. Instead, I have assumed that the English-speaking reader—learner would prefer to have a list of rough translation equivalents, a few words on any usage restrictions or peculiarities, and then move straight to actual example sentences, the latter being a decided strength of this work.

Those readers who have already searched elsewhere for supplementary information on Korean language and grammar will probably recognize the influence of Samuel Martin's *Reference Grammar of Korean* in my approach. Indeed, in many places I have simply jettisoned the authors' original Korean prose descriptions in favor of reproducing the glosses from Martin's grammar (sometimes verbatim, sometimes with additional interpretations of my own).

The present work fills an important gap in the all-too-meagre repertoire of published reference works on Korean for the English-speaking learner. It presents, in a systematic and user-friendly fashion, the major features of Korean grammar with an abundance of carefully constructed example sentences. The authors are refreshingly unabashed in their espousal of the importance of grammar education in Korean language teaching, and yet their book (in its English version, I hope), is not so terribly terminology-laden and 'linguisticky' as to turn off the would-be user. I would also venture to say that this book could serve as a useful backbone text to an advanced undergraduate course or graduate seminar on 'Korean Pedagogical Grammar', and its utility is increased all the more by the separately published 영어문법집과 해답.

Ross King
approach like this will make possible both an understanding of the deep structures within the language, and an understanding of pragmatic issues.

2. Special Features of Korean Grammar

In the course of editing and compiling this book, we have paid attention to a number of special features.

First: By focussing our exposition more on the basis of the general grammar found in Korean school grammars than on the normative grammars produced by linguists, we hope to overcome the limitations of the latter and provide the foreign learner with an easier, more accessible tool for acquisition.

Second: The exposition of the book was planned in three discrete stages. In the first stage, we systematized Korean grammar. In the second stage, we tried to predict the difficulties that foreigners would encounter in learning Korean as a second language. In the third stage, we tried to verify those difficulties through actual teaching experience. In particular, we strove in the creation of the example sentences to use as many new and practical words and expressions as possible so as to enhance their immediate usefulness.

Third: The supplementary volume Practice Exercises and Answer Key was devised on the basis of scientific methodology whereby we kept in mind the learners' levels and learning process, and verified common errors and estimated relative difficulty levels. This seemed most useful for effective teaching aimed at foreign learners.

3. The Structure of Korean Grammar
Contents

Authors' Preface · iii
Translator's Preface · v
Preliminaries · vii

Chapter one

Special Features of Korean Grammar and Sentence Structure

1. Part of speech in Korean/1
2. Special Features of Korean Grammar/4
3. Basic Sentence Structure of Korean/6
   1) Basic Sentence Types/6
   2) Constituent Elements of Sentence Structure/6
   3) Korean Sentence Structure Types/14

Chapter Two

Nouns

1. Noun Functions/19
2. Noun Type/20
3. Bound Nouns/20
   1) Nouns Always Used Dependently/21
   2) Free Forms which also function as Bound Nouns/20

Chapter Three

Pronouns

1. Personal Pronouns/83
2. Demonstrative Pronouns/85

Chapter Four

Numerals

89
1. Cardinal Numerals/89
   1) Pure Korean Cardinal Numerals • 90
   2) Sino-Korean Numerals • 92
2. Ordinal Numerals/93
   1) Pure Korean Ordinal Numerals • 93
   2) Sino-Korean Ordinal Numerals • 94

Chapter Five

Verbs ........................................................................... 97
1. Action Verbs/97
2. Descriptive Verbs/98
3. The Copula ‘-오(+/-)/99
4. The Verb ‘있다’/101
5. Verb Conjugation/102
   1) What is Conjugation • 102
   2) Conjugation Classes • 102
   3) Conjugation and Suffixes • 104
   4) Irregular Verbs • 104

Chapter Six

Adnominals ..................................................................... 115
1. Demonstrative Adnominals/115
2. Numerical Adnominals/116
3. Descriptive Adnominals/116

Chapter Seven

Adverbials ..................................................................... 119
1. Classification of Adverbs according to Meaning/119
   1) Time Adverbs • 119
   2) Frequency Adverbs • 120
   3) General Adverbs • 121
   4) Degree Adverbs • 122
2. Classification of Adverbs according to Method of

Chapter Eight

Exclamations .................................................................. 141
1. They express the instinctive surprise or emotion of the speaker/141
2. Exclamations are used to call or reply to others/142
3. Exclamations include words which are used as a short of empty filler hedge/142

Chapter Nine

Particles ........................................................................ 143
1. Case Particles/144
   1) Subject Particle • 144
   2) Object Particle • 146
   3) Complement Particle • 148
   4) Adnominal Particle • 148
   5) Adverbial Particle • 149
   6) Vocative Particle • 158
2. Connective Particles/159
3. Auxiliary Particles/161

Chapter Ten

Tense ........................................................................... 189
1. Tense Marking via Final Verb Endings/189

Word-formation/122
1) Non-derived Adverbs • 123
2) Derived Adverbs • 124
3) Interrogative~Indefinite Adverbs and Negative Adverbs • 128
4) Conjunctive Adverbs • 129
5) Mimetic Adverbs • 137
3. Adverbial Forms of Verbs via Inflection/138
4. Position of Adverbials/139
Chapter Eleven
Honoris and Humilifics

1. Subject Honorification
2. Speech Levels
   1) Formal Speech Level
   2) Informal Speech Level
3. Honorification by Means of Lexical Expressions

Chapter Twelve
Negation

1. Negation in Declarative and Interrogative Sentences
2. Negation in Imperative and Propositive Sentences
3. Lexical Negation
4. Negation in Confirmation Questions

Chapter Thirteen
Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings

1. Final Endings
   1) Final Endings and Speech Levels
   2) Final Endings with Special Uses
2. Conjunctive Endings
3. Adnominal Endings
4. Nominalizer Endings
   1) Summative

Chapter Fourteen
Auxiliary Verbs

1. Progressive Auxiliary Verbs
2. Terminative Auxiliary Verbs
3. Donatory Auxiliary Verbs
4. Exploratory Auxiliary Verbs
5. Iterative Auxiliary Verbs
6. Retentive Auxiliary Verbs
7. Desiderative Auxiliary Verbs
8. Descriptive Auxiliary Verbs
9. Negative Auxiliary Verbs
10. Auxiliary of Inability Verbs

Chapter Fifteen
Passive and Causative

1. Passives
   1) Short Passives
   2) Long Passives
2. Causatives
   1) Short Causatives
   2) Long Causatives

Chapter Sixteen
Quoted Speech

1. Direct Quoted Speech
2. Indirect Quoted Speech
   1) Characteristic for Indirect Quoted Speech
   2) Deletion of the Quotation Particle and of Dummy Verb

Chapter Seventeen
Prefixes and Suffixes

1. Prefixes
2. Suffixes

Reference Punctuation
Recommendations for Further Reading
Index
A sentence is composed of one or more words, and imparts a unified thought or feeling. This thought or feeling must be construed properly in accord with proper sentence structure for a sentence to be effective.

Languages, like all social and natural phenomena, are characterized by an organically intertwined set of rules and structures. The systematization and codification of these rules and relationships is called grammar.

It is the goal of this first chapter of Korean Grammar for Foreign Learners to provide the learner with a comprehensive framework and overview of the fundamental building blocks of Korean grammar.

1. Parts of speech in Korean (품사)

Sentences are combinations of words. It is not always easy to classify all words grammatically, but “parts of speech” refers to groups of words which share certain features. The 1963 Committee of Education deliberations on a unified school grammar recognized nine parts of speech in Korean, and Figure 1 below is based on the materials from these deliberations.
### Parts of Speech in Korean

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>사람, 개, 지하철, 사과, 나무</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>나, 우리, 여기, 철수, Ch’olsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Numerals</td>
<td>하나, 두, 일, 이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Action verbs</td>
<td>가다, 보다, 일하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Descriptive verbs</td>
<td>비싸다, 좋다, 아름다하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Adnominals</td>
<td>새, 연, 한, 두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>참, 대단히, 많이, truly, very, abundantly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Exclamations</td>
<td>oh!, well!, oh my!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>(Particles)</td>
<td>-이/가, -을/를, -와/과, -에, -에서, -(으)로</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The nine parts of speech presented above in Figure (1) can be further sub-classified as follows;

1) **Content Words and Function Words** (실사와 허사)

Content words are words with actual semantic content, while function words are items like particles which convey only grammatical meanings and relationships.

2) **Sub-classification according to Inflecting vs. Non-inflecting Forms**

Some words undergo changes in shape, while others maintain one constant shape. Verbals belong to the former class, and substantives and modifiers to the latter.

Inflecting words: 가다 → 가고, 가니, 가서
Non-inflecting words: 꽃, 사람, 개, 비둘기

3) **Sub-classification according to Word Function**

Whereas some words can perform multiple functions within a sentence, others can perform only one. The former are called substantives, and include nouns, pronouns and numerals. The latter are called modifiers, and include adnominals (words which modify nouns) and adverbials (words which modify verbs).

4) **Semantic Sub-classification**

The classification into nine parts of speech is determined by semantic criteria. The only exception are the exclamations, which, because they differ in function from adnominals and adverbials, are considered as independent forms.

Based on the classifications above, we can reorganize the “Parts of Speech” table somewhat more systematically and conveniently as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification of Parts of Speech*</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>분</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>류</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2. Special Features of Korean Grammar

In its morphology, Korean belongs to the ‘agglutinative’ languages, and in its genetic affiliation, Korean is thought to belong to the Altaic family of languages. Some of the typological features of these two groupings are as follows.

The normal word order in a Korean sentence is S(subject)—O(object)—V(verb). Other features of this word order are:

(A) Free word order of those elements preceding the verb. In other words, those elements other than the sentence-final verb are free to occur in almost any order:

**Examples:**

- 선생님이 학생에게 숙제를 주었다.
- 학생에게 선생님이 숙제를 주었다.
- 숙제를 선생님이 학생에게 주었다.
- 숙제를 학생에게 선생님이 주셨다.

The teacher gave the students homework.

(B) Modifier always precedes modified.

**Examples:**

- 내 친구는 아주 예쁜 차를 샀어요.
  My friend bought a really pretty car.

(C) Korean word order does not change in interrogative sentences, and there is no rule requiring question words to appear in sentence-initial position.

**Examples:**

- 이 가방은 누구의 가방입니까?
  Whose bag is this?

- A rich repertoire of particles and endings.

**Examples:**

- 할머니가 좋다 → 할머님께서는 좋으셨겠습니다.
  Grandmother is nice. → Grandmother (honorific)
  must have been nice.

- Korean has a highly developed system of honorifics and politeness.

- Korean freely allows the omission of subjects, objects, complements and predicates. Omission is allowed where context or situation makes recovery of the omitted element possible.

**Examples:**

- 선생님은 어디에 갔습니까? → 어디 가십니까?
  Where are you going, Sir? Where are you going?

- The category of singular vs. plural is not obligatory in Korean.

- Korean does not have grammatical gender, articles or relative pronouns.
3. Basic Sentence Structure of Korean

1) Basic Sentence Types

The minimum requirements for a sentence are a Subject and a Predicate. Depending on the nature of the Predicate, we can distinguish five types of sentence in Korean, as outlined in Figure (3) below.

(Figure 3) Sentence Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Basic sentence</th>
<th>Sentence Type acc. to nature of the predicate</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>무엇이 무엇을 하다</td>
<td>무엇이 무엇을 하여하다.</td>
<td>Yongsu sleeps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Something does something</td>
<td>Sth does sth to sth</td>
<td>Yongsu reads a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>무엇이 거꾸로하다</td>
<td>무엇이 무서워하거나</td>
<td>Rain turns to snow.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Something is some way</td>
<td>Sth becomes sth</td>
<td>산이 푸르다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>무엇이 무엇이 아니다</td>
<td>무엇이 무엇이 아니다</td>
<td>The mountain is green.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Something is something</td>
<td>Something is not something</td>
<td>그는 한국 사람이 아니다.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2) Constituent Elements of Sentence Structure

The constituent elements that make up the structure of a sentence consist of all parts of speech with the exception of particles. These constituent elements can be divided into main, subordinate and independent elements.

(1) Main Constituent Elements

The obligatory constituent elements of a sentence are Subject, Predicate, Object and Complement.

1 Subject (주어)

The subject of a sentence is usually a substantive. See Figure (4) below.

2 Predicate (사전어)

The predicate explains or says something about the subject. Basic predicate types include action verbs, descriptive verbs and the copula (treated by some Korean grammarians as a special kind of 사전격 조사 or 'predicative particle').

Examples:

Suni is playing. (Action verb or Processive verb)
산이 파랗습니다. (Descriptive verb)
The mountain is green. (Copula)
John is an American.

(Figure 4) Sentence Structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 Substantive + Subject particle</td>
<td>청수가 돌아온다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ch'olsu is coming.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>아미나께서 불고기를 만드셨어요.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mother prepared pulgogi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>청수는 머리가 좋습니다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ch'olsu is smart.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Yonghui is also smart. We had a banquet at our home.

Learning Korean is hard, isn't it? Writing is difficult.

Getting up early every morning is difficult. Composing sentences is hard, isn't it?

It was last Monday that I came to Korea. Moreover, one can also use predicate phrases or complex predicates made up of a main verb plus auxiliary verb:

Examples:
Kim is tall. Do not smoke.

NB: Depending on the characteristics of the verb used as predicate, the number of constituents needed in a sentence can vary. Thus, intransitive verbs tend to need only a subject, but transitive verbs tend to need both a subject and an object. Verbs like become and not to be require a complement.

Examples:
The flower bloomed. The baby drinks milk.

John is not a Korean. The water turned to ice.

Objects are nouns, or clauses or phrases with noun-like qualities, which take the object particle -着眼于. Verbs which require objects are called transitive verbs, and objects typically appear before transitive verbs.

Examples:
Mr. Kim teaches Korean. John likes to eat Korean food.

I know that he is a kind person.

In colloquial Korean, the object particle is often dropped. Furthermore, it is also possible to use one of the delimiters (e.g. 음/는, 도, 만), which can either replace the object particle or precede it:

Examples:
John speaks Korean well. I can't eat kimchi yet [implication: but I can eat other Korean foods].

That child can speak very well, too.
Koreans eat only rice.

Korean sentences allow more than one object, and sometimes nouns or noun phrases designating places or directions can take the object particle for emphasis.

**Examples:**
어머니가 아이에게 사탕을 한 알 더 주셨어요.
The mother gave the child one more piece of candy.
지금 어딜 가니?
Where are you going now?

**Complement**
The complement is an obligatory constituent of sentences containing verbs like 되다 *become* and 아니다 *not to be.*

**Examples:**
물이 얼음이 되었습니다.
The water turned to ice.
그는 선생님이 아닙니다.
He is not a teacher.
그분은 결국 대통령이 되었어요.
Ultimately, he became president.
볼사 여름이 된 것 같습니다.
It seems like it has already become summer.
천사가 아니라요.
I am not an angel.

(2) **Attributive Constituents (Modifier Constituents)**
The two main types of modifier constituents are adnominals (or adnouns—things which modify nouns) and adverbs (things which modify verbs).

**1 Adnominals:** things that modify nouns
Adnominals precede the noun they modify, and further specify something about the characteristics or state of the modified noun. Unlike adverbs, adnominals cannot be used alone and must be used in front of a following noun. It is possible to use more than one adnominal in the same sentence, but in such circumstances Korean observes the order Demonstrative Adnoun—Numeral Adnoun—Descriptive Adnoun.

**Examples:**
백화점에서 에쁜 옷을 샀어요. (adnoun)
I bought some pretty clothes at a department store.
이 두 젊은 남녀는 서로 사랑하는 사이입니다.
(Demonstrative+Numeral+Descriptive adnoun)
This young boy and girl love each other.

Figure (5) below demonstrates modifying structures.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adnominal Structures</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All pre-nouns function as adnouns.</td>
<td>청수가 세 모자를 샀습니다, Ch’olsu bought a new hat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any combination of noun+possessive particle의 can function as an adnominal.</td>
<td>이것이 청수의 책입니다, This is Ch’olsu’s book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Substantive+Particle+possessive의</td>
<td>학자인 김 박사님을 존경해요, I respect Dr. Pak the scholar.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>외국인인 존슨씨를 아세요? Do you know Mr. Johnson, the foreigner?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>학생과의 만남이 즐거웠어요. The meeting with the students was enjoyable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter One

Life at school is beneficial.
Please have pride in being a Korean.
He is a good teacher.
Let me inform you of the method of speaking.

Verbs in one of the modifier forms can function as adnominals. The modifier endings -는, -(으)로, -(으)로 and -던 also indicate tense. (See Chapter 13).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun+nominalized form of -이다+의</th>
<th>入한영업의 공사를 가지고요. Please have pride in being a Korean.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Modifier form of any verb</td>
<td>좋은 선생입니다. He is a good teacher.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nominalized form of a verb+</td>
<td>발하기의 방법을 알려 드리죠. Let me inform you of the method of speaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive의</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Adverbials (부사어): things that modify verbs
There are two types of adverbials—adverbs which modify elements at the sub-sentence level (constituent adverbs), and adverbs which modify the sentence as a whole (sentential adverbs).

Constituent Adverbs

Examples:
저기 가는 분이 이 선생입니다.
The man walking over there is Mr. Lee.
이 편지를 보낸 사람이 제 친구입니다.
The person who sent this letter is my friend.
내일 한낮 친구는 대학 동창입니다.
The friend who I will meet tomorrow is a university classmate.
여기 살던 사람이 이사했습니다.
The person who used to live here moved.
지난 주에 먹었던 음식은 참 맛있이 있었어요.
The food we ate last week was quite delicious.

Sentential Adverbs

Examples:
가서 갑시다.
Let go right away.
나무 아래서 못 갔습니다.
Because I was so sick, I couldn't go.
겨우 한 시간 잔아요.
I barely slept one hour.

Korea is indeed beautiful. (Indeed, Korea is beautiful.)
Sure enough, it just doesn't seem like winter without snow.

Adverbials are relatively compatible with delimiters and, unlike adnominals, are characterized by a relatively free word order.

Examples:
시간은 빨리도 가는군요!
The time is going by so fast!
김 선생님에게 저는 예쁜 말이 있습니다.
Mr. Kim has a beautiful daughter.

NB: However, this freedom of word order does not apply when an adverbial modifies an adverb, adnominal or noun, or in the case of negation adverbs.

(3) Free Forms (독립어)
Free forms are independent constituents which nonetheless affect the entire sentence, and have the following characteristic: a sentence remains an acceptable sentence even if one removes them.
Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Types of Free Form</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exclamations</td>
<td>Oh my! The flowers have bloomed!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Answers</td>
<td>Yes, I understand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headings, Titles</td>
<td>Youth — such a vibrant time!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun + vocative particle</td>
<td>Hey Suk! Can you please help me?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>* Conjunctive Adverbs</td>
<td>It's raining. But I left.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Conjunctive adverbs like 그리고, 그리고, 그런데, 그리고, and 그래서 count as either Free Forms or Conjunctive Adverbs.

(2) Complex Sentences (복합문 or 접문장)

Complex sentences can be further subdivided into two types. Complex Sentences characterized by Conversion

By this is meant cases when a simple sentence is converted into a nominalized verb phrase, modifier clause, adverbial clause, quotation, or the like, and is included within another sentence. In such cases, the number of converted sentences is one or more, and in cases where the matrix sentence and a converted sentence or clause share constituents, one of the shared constituents can be omitted.

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examples:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Our university is located in America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We knew that John had returned to America.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It was revealed that there were irregularities in the election.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That child prayed to enter that university.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't have any recollection of lending money to him.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The contents of this book are very good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He graduated from university without any help from his parents.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
이 집은 돈이 많이 들었다. (predicate clause)
This house cost a lot of money.
나는 그의 결심이 옳았다고 생각한다. (quoted clause)
I think his determination was right.
그의 눈에서 눈물이 비 오듯이 흘렀다. (adverbial clause)
The tears flowed from his eyes like rain.
나는 “여행을 좋아 하십니까?”라고 물었다. (quoted clause)
I asked her: “Do you like traveling?”

Complex Sentences characterized by Coordination and Subordination

Complex sentences of this type occur when two or more sentences are combined, either with coordinative endings like -고 and -는(는), or with subordinative endings like -도록, -게, -(으)니, -(으)면, etc. In this case, too, it is possible to omit shared constituents, and the number of connected sentences is two or more.

Complex Sentences characterized by Coordination

Examples:
영수는 고향으로 내려갔고 찬이는 군대에 들어갔다.
Yongsu went home and Ch’ori went into the army.
그는 늘 성격이 명랑하며 남과도 잘 어울린다.
He always has a cheerful character and fits in well with others.
봄에는 꽃이 피고 새가 울나.
In spring, the flowers bloom and the birds sing.
여름에는 비가 오고 여름에는 눈이 온다.
In summer it rains and in winter it snows.

Complex Sentences characterized by Subordination:

Examples:
빗물이 들어 오지 않도록 창문을 닫았다.
I shut the window so the rain wouldn’t come in.
소화가 잘 되게 목록 식어 먹었다.
I chewed my food well so it could digest better.

Special Features of Korean Grammar and Sentence Structure

봄이 되면, 날씨도 따뜻해지겠군요!
When spring comes, the weather will warm up, too!
지금은 피곤하니, 내일만났으면 좋겠어요.
I’m tired now, so it would be better if we could meet tomorrow.
시간이 없어서 택시를 탈지마 못했습니다.
Because there was no time, I took a taxi, but I was late.

NB: It is not always easy to distinguish between complex sentences characterized by coordination and subordination—the objective criteria for this distinction are weak. As a rule of thumb, we can characterize as coordination those complex sentences where it is possible to switch the positions of the two clauses without changing the overall meaning of the sentence.

Examples:
여름에는 비가 오고 겨울에는 눈이 온다.
In summer it rains and in winter it snows.
겨울에는 눈이 오고 여름에는 비가 온다.
In winter it snows and in summer it rains.

In the case of words connected by the coordinative particle 와/과 and functioning as subject, object or adverb, it is possible to replace the particle with a comma:

Examples:
인천과 부산은 항구도시이다.
Inch’on and Pusan are port cities.
인천. 부산은 항구도시이다.
He speaks English, Japanese and French well.
1. Noun Functions

Nouns have four main functions, which can be exemplified as follows.

1. Nouns can be the subject of a sentence.

   **Examples:**
   
   선생님은 좋은 분입니다.
   
   Mr. Kim is a good person.

2. Nouns can be modified.

   **Examples:**
   
   선생님의 책을 친구에게 보여 주시어요.
   
   The teacher showed my book to a friend.

3. Particles attach to nouns to show grammatical case relations.

   **Examples:**
   
   선생님의 나의 책을 친구에게 보여 주시어요.
   
   The teacher showed my book to a friend.
Examples:
우리들은 어제 친구에 집에서 놀았습니다.
Plural Marker Plural Marker
We played at some friends' house yesterday.

2. Noun Type

Words which name people or things are called nouns. Nouns can be divided into proper nouns and common nouns, and into free nouns and bound nouns. These distinctions are exemplified in Figure (7).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criterion</th>
<th>Noun Type</th>
<th>Nature &amp; Definition</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sphere of Usage</td>
<td>Proper Nouns</td>
<td>names attached to a specific person or thing</td>
<td>동대문, 김영수, 대한민국, 한국인</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Common Nouns</td>
<td>names of things</td>
<td>지하철, 학교, 집</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Freeness vs.</td>
<td>Free Nouns</td>
<td>nouns which can be used without the help of other words</td>
<td>하늘, 사랑, 문, 제주도, 서류, 가방</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boundness</td>
<td>Bound Nouns</td>
<td>nouns which need other words to function</td>
<td>분, 것, 만</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Bound Nouns

Bound nouns have all the features of other nouns, but cannot be used alone; instead, they are always preceded by some adnominal element like a modifier or pre-noun. They are also sometimes referred to as 'incomplete nouns' (불완결명사) or 'dependent nouns' (의존명사). (See page 86).

Examples:
친구가 온 것을 듣느리야요. modifier Bound noun
I didn’t know that my friend had come.

More examples:
그것은 내가 바라는 바가 아니에요.
That is not what I am hoping for.

단지 그 사람을 믿을 뿐이다.
I believe her and her alone.

옷을 입은 채로 물속에 떠어들어도요.
He jumped into the water with his clothes on.

NB: We have treated ‘그것’ as a pronoun. (see page 86).

1) Nouns Always Used Dependently

(1) 것 : thing; fact

The bound noun -것 can designate things, phenomena or facts. It has few constraints on its usage, and thus can appear freely with various particles, the copula -이다, the verb 같다 be like, seem like, etc. Before vowels, the final - can drop, leaving just -것.

\[ \text{Vst} + (-\text{것}) \rightarrow \text{부}/(-\text{것}) \text{ 경 것} \]
the fact that ... was/is/will do be

Examples:
그가 일생 동안 쓴 것은 시 한 편뿐이었어요.
The only thing that he wrote his whole life was one poem.
Of course, it is a fact that roses are beautiful.

Persuading others is not an easy thing.

Were you aware that she was experiencing difficulties?

Lately I'm not experiencing particularly many inconveniences in [my] life on foreign soil.

Any Base $(으)로 간 것이라

is the case that ... will do or be; will probably do or be; one supposes that... will do or be

This pattern expresses the speaker's supposition about a future action or state. Sometimes the pattern can express the speaker's supposition about a current or past action or state, too.

Examples:

그 친구는 악속을 꼭 지킬 것입니다.

That friend will definitely keep her promise.

이번 주에 저는 부산에 출장갈 거예요.

This week I will probably be going on a business trip to Pusan.

이제 한국을 잘 이해하실 수 있을 거예요.

Now you can probably understand Korea well.

그 책은 별로 어렵지 않았을 것입니 다.

That book probably wasn't or probably wouldn't be particularly difficult.

그 음식은 외국인에게는 좀 매울 거예요.

That food is probably or probably will be a bit spicy for a foreigner.

An abbreviation from - (으)로 간 것입니 다.

lit.: is it the case that ... will do or be?; will it probably do or be?; does one suppose that... will do or be?

An abbreviation from - (으)로 객입니 다.

This pattern solicits the hearer's opinion about a future action or state, or about a probable current event.

Examples:

일찍 집에 갈 견건어요?

Are you going [to go] home early?

학교에 빨리 고여 객건어요?

Are you going to send a letter to the folks back home?

몇 시간에 집에 전화가 실 견건어요?

What time are you going to call me?

이번 주말에는 어디로 여행가실 견건요?
Where will you be traveling to this weekend?

How are you going to find her house without a map?

Vst + -(으)르 것 없다

I Pronounced with a rising question intonation, the pattern expresses the speaker's guarded opinion or supposition, often as a correction to what the hearer assumes or is thought to be assuming:

Examples:

\[ \text{I wish I had but... (I didn't)} \]— regretting lost opportunities; I should have (but I didn't)

This pattern occurs in two different meanings.

1. Pronounced with a rising question intonation, the pattern expresses the speaker's guarded opinion or supposition, often as a correction to what the hearer assumes or is thought to be assuming:

Examples:

- But don't you think Mr. Kim probably isn't at home?
- Don't you think Mr. Lee will probably have arrived back home by now?
- I'll bet that novel is [actually] rather interesting.
- I should have listened to the weather forecast first before making my hiking plans.
- Don't you think it would be dangerous to cross without looking at the signal?
- I wouldn't have gone out if I had known friends were coming.
- I would have gone on a trip or something if I had known it was a long weekend starting today.

2. Without a rising question intonation, the pattern expresses regret over a course of action not taken. In this meaning, the pattern is often rounded off with [그랬어요] the [그랬어요] is obligatory if one wishes to remain in the Polite (※ 많이) Style.

Examples:

- My stomach hurts — I should have skipped lunch.
- I should have listened to the weather forecast first before making my hiking plans.
- I would have gone on a trip or something if I had known it was a long weekend starting today.

Vst + -(으)로 것 없다

there is no need to (do), one need not (do); there is no point in doing; there is no reason/call to do it

Note that whereas -(으)로 것 없다 can mean literally there is nothing to do, in the idiomatic usage here, it is not possible to add the subject particle 이 to it. One can use the opposite collocation -(으)로 것이 있다 only in rhetorical questions.

Examples:

- [lit: without there being any need for] ranting and raving, why don't you meet them in person?
- What the use in talking to a person who just won't listen to reason?
It seems like/appears that... did/is doing/ will do or be

Examples:
- It looks like it's going to rain.
- Boy, that food sure looks like it will [or must] taste great!
- It doesn't appear that there is anybody living in that house.
- It looks like class is already over.
- It looks like those two have known each other [or have been dating] for quite a long time.
- If it seems to be: if it is

While this pattern is a simple combination of the seem pattern in -(으)ㄴ 것 같다 and the conditional pattern in -(으)면, in addition to the literal meaning one would predict from this combination (i.e., if it seems that... will do or be), it also often carries the meaning of if it seems to you that... i.e., if you think that... if you reckon that...

Examples:
- As I recall, it seemed he was always using either the bus or the subway.
- As I recall, it seemed there were guests, so why is it so quiet?
- As I recall, it seemed the airplane had already left.
- As I recall, it seemed they had caught the thief; you still haven't been able to find some of your things?
- Though it snowed, the snow all melted, so [as I recall] the roads didn't seem to be slippery.

When one considers the fact that...; considering the fact that... then

This pattern is a combination of the pattern in -(으)ㄴ 것 보니... when one considers the fact that...; meaning see/consider the fact that... plus the Sequential pattern -(으)나 in its meaning of since, because.

Examples:
- Considering how red his nose is, it seems he is rather fond of alcohol.
- Seeing how I keep getting thirsty, it would appear my lunch was too salty.
Given the fact that the door is locked, it would appear that nobody is home!

Looks like something good has happened. Seeing how she’s singing to herself.

It looks like something good has happened. Seeing how he always home during the day, it would appear he has quit his company.

(2) 결 and also, in addition, as well, plus, at the same time, combining (two functions)

Patterns in 결 are used when two or more actions happen simultaneously. The noun 결 can function both as a post-noun in the pattern ‘NOUN 결 NOUN’ and as a post-modifier in the pattern ‘AVst+-(으) 결 결’

Noun 결 Noun
Noun-cum-Noun

Examples:

이곳은 강당 결 설내 체육관으로 쓰입니다.

We use this place as an auditorium-cum-gymnasium.

수상 결 국방장관인 그는 인품이 그만이있습니다.

He holds the portfolios for both Prime Minister and Minister of Defence, and is said to be impeccable character.

의말이라 아들 결 말 노릇을 하지요.

I am only daughter, so I play the role of both son and daughter.

이것 결 밤식으로 삼아요.

I bought this to use as a desk-cum dining table.

아침 결 점심으로 11시쯤 밥을 먹었습니다.

I ate an early lunch‘late breakfast at around 11.

AVst+-(으) 결
with the combined/simultaneous purpose of …-ing

This pattern also appears in an extended form as -(으) 결 -(으) 결 해서 or -(으) 결 결사결사해서, and is compatible only with action verbs.

Examples:

손자도 결 결 밥도 만날 결 해서 왔습니다.

I've come to combine visiting my daughter with seeing my grandson.

전보도 결 결 전보도 부릴 결 해서 우체국에 들었습니다.

I stopped in at the post office to [kill two birds with one stone and] send a telegram and post a letter.

살도 결 결 건강을 위해서 운동을 시작했습니다.

I've started exercising for the sake of my health and so as to lose some weight.

친구도 결 결 친구도 결을 결 결사결사해서 왔어.

I thought I come so as to see my friends and catch up on some hometown gossip.

경기도 결 결 감사전환도 결 결 여행을 떠나라고 합니다.

I'm planning to go away on a trip as to travel to some sight-seeing with a change of pace.

(3) 결 (on the) impetus (of); while (one is at/about it), when, as, since, as long as (-- anyway); incidental to the occasion of, in addition, as an incidental result of; on the spur of, by the force of, in an unplanned or unanticipated moment of…

This pattern captures the idea of taking advantage of an opportunity to perform a related activity.

AVst+-(으) 결
while one is at it/about it

Examples:

먹 본 결에 점심을 지내줘요. [속담]
Strike while the iron is hot. [Proverb]
여기에 온 길에 그 문을 만나고 가겠어요.
As long as I’m here, I’ll meet him before I go.
만약 네가 온 길에 내 집을 좀 설명하고 싶습니다.
Since we’re on the subject, I like to explain my position, too.
생각난 길에 밖 선생님께 전화를 거듭시요.
Now that I think of it, why don’t you call Mr. Pak?
As long as you’re writing, why don’t you write one more page for me?

*Do not confuse this pattern with the pattern in -는 길에, which is highly compatible with the verbs of motion 오다 and 가다, and has a different meaning: on the way [coming/going] to… [See page 66].

Example:
한국에 가는 길에 일본에도 들을 계획입니다.
I plan to stop over in Japan on the way to Korea.
지내에 나가는 길에 양복도 한 벌 맞추고 살아요.
I want to have a suit fitted on the way downtown, too.
길 선생을 만나러 가는 길에 제 사무실에도 좀 들르세요.
On your way to meet Mr. Kim why don’t you drop by my office, too?

(4) 나무 depending on...

Noun 나무이다
depending on the Noun: it depends on the Noun
AVst + -기 나무이다
it depends on …ing; depending on how one does it

Example:
사람도 사람 나무이지 모두가 나쁜 것은 아닙니다.
Of course, everything depends on the individual — not all people are bad.
사랑받는 것은 자기가 하기 나움입니다.

Being loved depends on the effort that you put in.
사랑받는 것은 자기가 하기 나움이지 그 사람이 억 하느냐면 못해요.
Praise though it may have been, it would have been better left unsaid.
백화점 물건이라고 다 좋은 것은 아니야, 물건 나무이지.
Just because it’s from a department store doesn’t mean it’s a better product. It depends on the product.
먹기 나움이지만 음식이 모자라지는 않을 거예요.
It depends on how [much] people eat, but I don’t think we’ll be short of food.

(5) 나무 need; leeway

This pattern conveys the idea that there is no further need to perform the action of the preceding clause, or that there is no further room or flexibility for the action.

AVst + -(으)로 나무가 없다
(not) enough (to); (hardly) worth …ing; (no) need (to)

Example:
기쁘기는 더 말할 나무가 없으십니다.
It goes without saying that I’m happy.
더 이상 설명할 나무가 없네. 그런 말하면 돌아들었을 테니까.
There’s no need to explain any further. With that much [explanation] he should have gotten it by now.
모두 끝난 일을 가지고 이렇게 처럼 더 말할 나무가 없겠어요?
Is there any point in all of us carrying on about something finished and done?
그만하네 좋은 실부감이니까 더 생각해 보 나무가 없도록구요.
I’m telling you — a guy that good is fine wife material, so there’s no need to give it any more thought.
더치 제하고 나무없이 이루 왜벽하신가요.
They say it’s so absolutely perfect that there is no need for reconsideration.
(6) **담을 just, only**

This particular post-modifier can only be preceded by the prospective modifier -(으)ㄹ, and is always followed by the copula -(이)다. In meaning, this pattern is similar to that in -(으)ㄴ 뿐.

\[ Vst + -(으)ㄹ 날름이다 \]

**Examples:**

그 아이가 놀기만 하니 한심할 날름입니다.
I just at a loss—all that kid does is fool around.

목독히 내 간만을 잘 날름이죠.
All I’m doing is going about my own business quietly.

소화가 좀 안 될 날름이지, 별 말은 없습니다.
It’s just that I’m having a bit of trouble with my digestion; otherwise no major complaint.

말 많은 세상이나, 그저 조심할 날름이야요.
There are all sorts of crazy rumors out there, so I’m just being careful.

자유가 아니면 죽음이 있을 날름입니다.
Without freedom, there is only death.

(7) **대로 as, just as, just as it is/was, with something still (as it was); in accordance with; as soon as**

**Examples:**

Do it as you wish — Do it in accord with your own ideas.

Put the big ones with the big ones and the little ones with the little ones.

Children copy what adults do.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As you would expect from oil its being oil; oil being the way it is”, it only floats over water, and doesn’t mix with water.

As you would expect of students, they all have their own individual ideas.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As promised, I kept the secret.

As promised, I kept the secret.
Do according to what you think will be best.

Of course, there is the old saying that what you sow you shall reap.

There are lots of things in life that don't turn out the way you want [in accordance with the way in which you make up your mind.]

Please go home as soon as your work is finished.

The related pattern below in V-(으)른 대로 V-어(아, 여)서 has the meaning of 'do/be as much as is possible'

*Examples:

- That elephant eats up whatever you give him.
- He earns money and spends it all as soon as he earns it.
- He wants to buy everything he lays eyes on.
- Please give me a call as soon as you arrive home.
- She'll write back straight away as soon as she receives the letter.

Vst+--(으)른 대로 can have the meaning of 'as much as is possible, as ... as is feasible'

*Examples:

- This book is as worn out as worn out can be, so I can't make out the writing properly.
- My hair has fallen out so much that there is no hair left to lose.
- We've used that method so much that it's best not to use it any more.
- Everyone's humanity is so completely tapped out that life is bleak.

*The -(으)른 대로 ... -어(아, 여)서 in this example is, for all practical purposes, another independent pattern meaning does/is as much as it is possible to do/be.

AVst+-는 대로 in accordance with the way [somebody] said/told/ordered.

This pattern is a contraction from the quoted structure -는다고 하는 대로, and thus means [act] as per the statement or instructions I am quoting.

*Examples:

- The economic situation has gotten so difficult that it's a problem.
- It would be best if you could come as quickly as possible.
I did as the professor said I told me to do, so the results should be good.

I did everything just as you asked me to do, so why the complaining?

I went along with my friend as requested, and it turned out to be a bar.

I just let her go wherever it was she said she was going to go.

I did everything in accord with the way my parents suggested.

(8) 대신 instead of ..., in place/lieu of; in recompense for

Noun 대신(예)

instead of Noun

Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/는 대신(예)

instead of doing/having done, in place/lieu of doing/having done; in recompense for doing/having done

Note that the 예 is optional, and usually omitted, and that in the recompense meaning, the verb can appear in the negative with no change in the overall meaning of the pattern.

Examples:

- 대신, 대신 하지 않아서 임을 했습니다.
  Instead of going to the office, I worked at home.
- Vst+-(-으)ㄴ/는 대신(예)

This item is expensive, but on the other hand it is of very high quality.

Of course, it is good etiquette not to talk too much during meals.

A lot of phone calls came in while you were out.

(9) 동안 an interval, while,

A Vst+-는 동안(예)

while (doing)

Examples:

- 한국에서 나는 동안 많은 것을 배웠습니다.
  I learned many things while living in Korea.
- 동안에는 전화를 받을 수 없습니다.
  While he’s in conference, he can’t answer the phone.
- 동안에 친구를 기타리는 동안 편지를 썼습니다.
  I wrote a letter while waiting for my friend at a teahouse.
- 동안에는 너무 말을 많이 하지 않는 것이 예의.
  It is good etiquette not to talk too much during meals.

(10) 동

Vst+-는/(으)른 동

you can tell whether; may or may not

This pattern is used to show an alternation or vague choice between one of two or more contradictory but equally likely appearances, of which the second is usually, but not always, some form of 말다 desists.

And the entire expression is usually concluded by the auxiliary verb 한다 or the auxiliary adjective 하다 as appropriate, but 하다 (or 라다) may be preferred when the Vst+-는 is viewed as static. This pattern can also attach to quoted structures, in which case the verb is usually descriptive.
Examples:

He's being lazy — you can't tell if he's working or not.

He was on the verge of saying something, but ended up keeping his mouth shut.

lie sort of picked at his rice half-heartedly, and the next thing I knew, he had eaten a whole bowl.

Because [saying] the mountain was steep and the road slippery, they gave up midway and came back down.

Everybody got something to say about the exam — some say it was too easy, some say it was too hard.

He was blabbing on as if he were the greatest on earth.

He keeps on swaggering around as if he were the greatest.

They were making a big fuss as if something important had happened.

It was incredibly noisy as if some very important guest were arriving.

They say he suddenly made a fist as if he might hit her.

Examples:

그는 나를 본 듯 반 듯 모른 척하고 지나갔어요.

I couldn't tell if he saw me or not; he passed by pretending not to notice me.

I didn't have any time, so I left for work without having eaten a proper breakfast.

It looked like she might go away somewhere to get away from the heat — so I guess she's gone!

She's speaking in such a barely audible voice that I can't make out what she's saying.

Examples:

비가 올 듯하군요.

Say, looks like it's going to rain!

It seems Cholsu is sick lately.

That person appears to be a student.

The scorching heat on account of the drought is continuing apace.
Though it looks like he'll fall over any moment, the baby walks quite well!

The auxiliary verb 4 in this pattern implies a more subjective and speaker-oriented kind of seem than the pattern above.

*Examples:*

- Seeing as there is a rainbow in the sky, I have a feeling the weather will be good tomorrow.
- Seeing as your friend still hasn't come, it would appear something has come up.
- Seeing the way he shouts, I say he must have held a high government office in the past.

(12) 리 (good) reason that/to...

*Examples:*

- You don’t suppose he would forget an appointment, do you?
- That strange, I wouldn’t expect him to have driven drunk.
- They’ve lived together for more than 10 years; how could he not know her personality?
- I told him several times, so there’s no way he wouldn’t understand what I meant.

(13) 만

*Examples:*

- After putting in so much effort, how could it not succeed?
as much as Noun, equal to Noun

**Examples:**

그 나라만큼 어려움이 많았던 나라도 드물 거예요.
There are probably few countries to have experienced as many difficulties as that country.

오늘만큼 기분 좋은 날도 많지 않았어요.
There have been few days when I was in as good a mood as I am today.

저는 선생님만큼 한국말을 잘 하지 못합니다.
I can't speak Korean as well as my teacher. [Or: as you]

백 전쟁만큼 무서운 전쟁이 어디 있겠어요?
What war could be more frightful than [as frightful as'] a nuclear war?

우리만큼 다른 친구가 또 있을까?
Do you think there could possible ever be a pair of friends as close as we are?

Vst + -(으) 니/-(으) 니 만큼
so much that, enough to, to the extent that

**Examples:**

내가 도와 준 만큼 그도 나를 도왔어요.
He helped me as much as I helped him.

내가 일한 만큼 대우를 받고 싶어요.
I want to be paid in an amount appropriate to the work I did.

나는 대우는 만큼 잃어 버리기도 하나 외요.
It would appear that I forget as much as I learn.

우리가 바 둥아 간 만큼 많이 남긴 않았어요.
The room wasn't big enough for all of us to fit in it.

그 사람의 말을 듣 야아들 만큼 내가 듣지는 않아요.
I'm not so thick as to be unable to understand what he was saying.

Vst + -(으) 니/-(으) 니 만큼
as much as the doing—having done; insofar as/seeing as did—does/is—was

---

**Examples:**

They pay well in recognition of the difficulty of the work.

Insofar as the drought is severe, we should use water sparingly.

What war could be more frightful than [as frightful as'] a nuclear war?

Do you think there could possible ever be a pair of friends as close as we are?
41 Chapter Two

(16) 무렵 the time/occasion (when)

Examples:
동을 무렵에 해변가에 나가 보세요.
Why don’t you go out to the seashore around daybreak?
어름이 다 걸 무렵에 새벽이 나기 시작했어요.
Just as summer was coming to a close the new buds began to come out.
우리가 철을 무렵이 되면, 부모님은 돌아가시고 안 계시겠죠.
At about the time we finally reach maturity, our parents will probably be dead and gone.
내가 근에 인대한 것은 전쟁이 끝날 무렵이었어요.
It was about the time the war ended that I entered the army.
엔지 해 질 무렵이 되면, 마음이 쏙쏙해서 그래요.
It's because, for some reason, whenever it gets toward sunset, I start to feel lonely.

(17) 바 way, means; a thing, that (which)

Examples:
성경을 읽고 개발은 바가 있어요.
I've come to realize something as a result of reading the Bible. [Lit. : There is something I've come to realize…]
그것은 그 사람 일거리 내가 알 바가 아니에요.
That's his business, and none of mine.
전생금도 아시는 바와 같이 저는 영어를 모르치료요.
As you know, too, I don't know English.
요즘 몰리는 바에 의하면 섭유 값이 계속 내리단다나 와요.
According to what I hear lately, it seems they say the price of oil is still going down.
문제가 커지서 어쩔 바를 모르겠어요.
The problem has become so big, I don't know what to do.

Examples:
친구를 도울 바에는, 아무 조건 없이 도와주십시오.
As long as/if you're going to help a friend, you should/might as well as do so unconditionally.
아무 치료도 받지 않을 바에야 해 병원에 있습니까?
If you're not going to have any treatment, what the point of being in the hospital?
범을 만들기만 하고 지키지 않을 바에야 해 애써 만들까요?
If you're going to make laws without observing them, what the point of going to the trouble of making them?
이상해 떠날 바에야 미련 없이 떠나세요.
If you insist on leaving, please do so without any regrets.
집을 지을 바에야 한 번 멋지게 지어 보세요.
If you're going to build a house, build a really nice one.

(18) Vst+-(으)로 변했다

Examples:
어제 밤까지는 바와 같이 저는 영어를 모르치료요.
According to what I heard lately, it seems they say the price of oil is still going down.
문제가 커지서 어쩔 바를 모르겠어요.
The problem has become so big, I don't know what to do.

Examples:
친구를 도울 바에야, 아무 조건 없이 도와주십시오.
As long as/if you're going to help a friend, you should/might as well as do so unconditionally.
아무 치료도 받지 않을 바에야 해 병원에 있습니까?
If you're not going to have any treatment, what the point of being in the hospital?
범을 만들기만 하고 지키지 않을 바에야 해 애써 만들까요?
If you're going to make laws without observing them, what the point of going to the trouble of making them?
이상해 떠날 바에야 미련 없이 떠나세요.
If you insist on leaving, please do so without any regrets.
집을 지을 바에야 한 번 멋지게 지어 보세요.
If you're going to build a house, build a really nice one.

Note that the auxiliary adjective 하다 in this pattern only ever occurs in the past tense. Usually the pattern occurs with action verbs, but in contrary-to-fact wish conditions in -더러면 the then-clause can consist of just bare verbs or abstract that have been.

Examples:
어제 밤까지는 바와 같이 저는 영어를 모르치료요.
According to what I heard lately, it seems they say the price of oil is still going down.
문제가 커지서 어쩔 바를 모르겠어요.
The problem has become so big, I don't know what to do.
I almost got hit by a car.

My stomach hurt so much I almost died.

If we had gone to the tea house we could have [almost] met our friends.

Too bad you couldn’t go with us [It would ‘almost’ have been good if...]

(19) 둘 only; merely; just; alone; nothing but; constantly

Vst + -(으) 큰 둘이다
all (the only thing one does/is is...)

Examples:

The only thing [Tact] I know is this.

The only place I can send the kids in peace of mind is the park in front of the house.

아이들을 안심하고 보낼 수 있는 곳은 집 앞 공원뿐이지요.
The only place I can send the kids in peace of mind is the park in front of the house.

The only place I can send the kids in peace of mind is the park in front of the house.

I can see any big trees on the mountain—it’s nothing but weeds.

e 돌 둘뿐이지 심상하는 것은 못 찾습니다.

I’ve never seen her actually do anything ['in practice'] — it always just words.

그 이야기를 믿고 있는 사람은 오직 김 선생뿐입니다.

The only person who believes that story is Mr. Kim.

Vst + -(으) 큰 둘(만) 아니라 : Noun + 둘(만) 아니라
not only... but (also); moreover; furthermore; as well as; besides, in addition, on top of that

Examples:

The only person who believes that story is Mr. Kim.

The only person who believes that story is Mr. Kim.

Not only does she study well, but she also has a nice personality.

This pattern is synonymous with the pattern above.

Examples:
Not only does she study well, but she also has a lot of talent for sports. Not only does she earn a lot of money she knows how to spend it, too. Not only does that foreigner like kimchi' he also likes red hot pepper paste. 

This year there were not only lots of natural disasters, but also lots of man-made disasters. Besides being favorably received by the people, that law is also working well in practice.

Vst+-다 씩, followed by rhetorical question or by copula -이다 is only…; is just…; is nothing but…; is merely…; it is merely that…?!

This pattern has two usages. In its first usage, it is not much different from Vst+-로 빼이다, but the -다 has the effect of quoting a prior statement (whether real or presumed). Thus, this first usage can be used to reiterate, reaffirm, or recapitulate something more forcefully. Note, though, that the preceding verb in this pattern rarely occurs as a verb, even with action verbs. In its second usage, the pattern is followed by a rhetorical question, and has the same forceful reaffirming effect.

Examples:

한국말을 조금 할 수 있어요.
I can speak a little Korean.

I'm not feeling well, so I can't work today.

There is no choice but for me to go out to the airport today.

Note that, as a noun, 수 can be followed by any number of different particles, depending on the nuance called for: 가, 는, 도 밖에, etc.

Examples:

한국말을 조금 할 수 있어요.
I can speak a little Korean.

I'm not feeling well, so I can't work today.

Note that, as a noun, 수 can be followed by any number of different particles, depending on the nuance called for: 가, 는, 도 밖에, etc.

Examples:

한국말을 조금 할 수 있어요.
I can speak a little Korean.

I'm not feeling well, so I can't work today.

There is no choice but for me to go out to the airport today.

NB: This pattern typically occurs with action verbs, but on a descriptive base, is compatible with the meanings of 'possibility', 'case' or 'occasion'.

Examples:

평수가 적으니까 망들이 좀을 수밖에 없어요.
There's not much square footage, so the rooms have no choice but to be small. [Lit.: there is no possibility other than being small]

When you have a fever, it is also possible to (there are also occasions when you) have an upset stomach

There's no way the price would be expensive — it's a wholesale market.

Depending on the brand, clothes can be a little bigger or a little smaller.

Examples:
Would there be any other good way to do it besides this method?

There was nothing we could do about it — we ended up giving up on it.

Our money's all gone, so what other alternatives do we have? We'll just have to starve.

Do you suppose there mightn't be a way to pass the entrance examination in one try?

The electric lights have gone out, and we haven't any candles, so there's nothing to do except go to bed.

Any Base -{(으)로} 수가 있다/없다
a way or means exists/does not exist; there are(n't) times or occasions when did/was or does/is

Examples:

We keep always having to spend money — When will we ever save any?

아무리 타일리도 말을 안 듣으니, 큰소리 안 칠 수가 있어야죠.
She never listens, no matter how much I admonish her; how can I not shout at her?

그 사람 하는 것이 저 곳이니 눈고도 그날 먹 수가 있어야죠.
What he's doing is so disgusting — I can't bare to look.

그것도 수저도 없으니, 빨 배집할 수가 있어야죠.
We've no plates and no utensils; there's no way for us to entertain them.

침자가 배워서 그날 먹을 수가 있어야죠. 그래서 물에 섭이 박았습니다.
The kimchi' was so hot it was impossible to eat. So I washed it off in water before eating it.

(21) 양 [apparent] expectation, plan, intention

AVst +{-{(으)로} 양(으로)}
as if having the intention to...; as if meaning to

Examples:

불우한 이웃을 도울 양으로 이야기를 하던군요.
He was saying something about perhaps helping out unfortunate neighbors.

국회의원으로 나설 양으로 그 지역 일에 발 빚고 나서다군요.
[I recall] he had plunged into regional affairs as if perhaps intending to stand for office as a National Assemblyman.

기회만 있으면 월칠 양으로 노려보는 호랑이 같아요.
He's like a tiger waiting for its chance to pounce, if only given the opportunity ('seeming as though intending to pounce, if only the opportunity arises').

집을 한 차 지을 양으로 설계 중입니다.
I'm in the midst of drawing up plans [with the intention] to build a house.

금방 결혼할 양으로 서두르다니 아직 소식이 없죠?
They were rushing headlong into an imminent marriage — still no news?

Vst +{-{(으)로} 는 양}
as if/as though seeming to have done—be doing—be
This particular seem pattern, which can be treated as an abbreviation of -(으) -/-(으) -는 모양, is perceived as softer and gentler than some of the other patterns with similar meanings, and thus appears frequently in poetry and sijo.

Examples:
사실도 아닌 일들 마치 사실인 양 창도 구려대네요.
You sure do make up untrue stories just as if they were fact!
돈도 한푼 없는데 부자란 양 헤세를 부리논군요.
You’re just putting on airs as if you were rich when you don’t even have a penny.
반장이라도 되는 양 어깨에 힘을 주고 다니던대요.
[It seems to recall] He was walking around with a [proud] strength in his shoulders as if he were becoming the Class Monitor or something.
온 세상이 자기 무대인 양 잡을 치고 있어요.
He’s carrying on as if the whole world were his stage.
무슨 착치라도 벌이는 양 따스막히군요.
They’re making a big racket as if throwing a banquet or something.

(22) 적 the time (when), (on) the occasion

This bound noun typically occurs as a post-modifier, but can also function as a post-noun.

Examples:
나도 그 사람을 만난 적이 있어요.
I met her once, too.
도서관에서 책을 읽어버린 적이 있어요.
I’ve lost a book once in the library.
언제가 제주도에 여행갔던 적이 있어요.

I traveled to Cheju Island once on some occasion or another.
발간 밖 육은 엎은 적이 없습니다.
I’ve never worn red clothes.
택시에 우산을 둔고 내린 적이 아닙니다.
I’ve left umbrellas in taxis on many occasions.

Vst  -(으) 로 적
the time when it is/does (or is about to do)

Examples:
세상 적 비론이 여든까지 간다.
A three-year old habits last to 80. (Proverb)
어렸을 적에 고향에 가 본 적이 있어요.
I went to my hometown once when I was little.
어 때를 들을 적에 밤 생각하고 있었어요?
What were you thinking about when you heard about me?
아이가 울 적마다 어떻게 달래셨어요?
How did you calm the baby down every time it cried?
전등 번개가 찔 적마다 감각감각 놀라곤 합니다.
Every time thunder and light strike, I startle.

(23) 줄 the assumed fact; the likelihood, probability; the how, the way (how to)

This post-modifier typically appears with verbs of knowing like 알다 and 모르다.

Examples:
온행에서 돈을 찾을 줄 알아?
Do you know how to take money out of the bank?
너는 술 마실 줄 아나?
Do you know how to drink?
I know how to speak in English, too.

That kid doesn't know how to run errands yet.

I know how to sing Korean songs, but I don't want to sing just now.

1 had no idea so much snow had fallen last night.

I had no idea she had so many varied talents.

Not knowing it was going to rain, I've come out without my umbrella.

An hour has passed since she went to the market, and she still hasn't come back.

Just 50 minutes after taking off, the airplane landed on Cheju Island.

Please give some thought as to whether this one would be good or that one, and then let me know.

Please let me know which is faster — the subway or a taxi.

It has been one week since I met her.

It has been 10 years since I came to Seoul.

It's been only a few months since I started learning Korean.

An hour has passed since she went to the market, and she still hasn't come back.

비행기가 이륙한 지 50분 만에 제주도에 착륙했습니다.

Just 50 minutes after taking off, the airplane landed on Cheju Island.

Please give some thought as to whether this one would be good or that one, and then let me know.

Please let me know which is faster — the subway or a taxi.
A kind of exclamation, this pattern literally means I have no idea how much it did or does [because it was so much or so incredible]. In place of 얼마나, one can also use other similar expressions like 어서나 or 어렇게나. This pattern is also frequently used in rhetorical questions.

**Examples:**

I have no idea how much it did or does.

The roads are so clogged up!

Do you have any idea what a pain it is to do the dishes after eating?

You have no idea how much the amounts of garbage reduced after we charged individuals for each garbage bag.

I miss her so much!

We plan to move to a new house once spring comes.

 zona 우에는 취직하는 대신 유학을 잘 참여해야요.

After graduation, I'm planning to go abroad to study instead of getting a job.

**AVst + -(으)려던 찬이다**

on the point/verge of: just when it was (has been) happening

**Examples:**

지금 막 전화를 걸려든 참이었습니다.

We were just about to call you now.

우리에게 가까운 마을을 탐험하던 찬이드군요.

When I went to the bank, they were just about to close the doors.

지금 심심해서 벌 마시려던 찬이든 같이 마실시다.

I was just feeling bored and fixing to get something to drink, so let's drink something together.

We jumped into the water with our clothes on, of course.

우리를 엿 때 마음 설이 높게 움직여 들었습니다.

I just overturned our clothes in the water, of course.

殷을 입은 삼년 동안 뒤에 들어왔어요.

He didn't say a word, and kept his mouth sealed shut.

문이 열렸던 세 아무도 없었습니다.

The door was open and there was nobody there.

시고난 자동차를 길에 버려둔 체로 도망가 버렸어요.
Chapter Two

They just left there bashed-up car as it was in the street and ran off. Seems he fallen asleep in front of the TV.

(27) 셔 pretense

This pattern is synonymous with the pattern in -(으)ㄴ/는 셔하다.

Vst + -(으)ㄴ/는 셔하다
pretends/makes as if did was/does is

Examples:
그 남자는 는 열심히 일하는 셔니다.
That man always pretends to be working hard.
아무리 자는 셔도, 소용없습니다.
No matter how much you try ‘pretend’ to sleep, it’s no use.
일부리 가본 종은 셔했지만, 친구들이 알아차림습니다.
I made a point of trying hard to pretend to be in a good mood, but my friends figured it out.
알고도 모르는 셔할 수밖에 없었습니다.
Even though we knew, all we could do was pretend ignorance.
보고도 못 본 셔, 듯이도 못 들은 렇, 알고도 모르는 셔였어요.
We saw, but pretended we hadn’t, we heard, but pretended we didn’t, and we knew, but pretended not to know.

(28) 탓 fault; reason, ground(s); because

This bound noun usually expresses the reason or cause for some unwanted or undesirable result. The reason or cause can also serve as an excuse.

Noun + 탓이다
is the fault of Noun, can be blamed on/attributed to Noun

Examples:
They say if all goes well, they take credit themselves, and if it doesn’t work out, they blame their ancestors.
The fact that he is so terribly forgetful can be blamed on his [advanced] age.
A lot of people fell victim on account of vicious big business owners.
The traffic accident was due to inexperienced driving.
I was late to school today because I woke up late.

Vst + -(으)ㄴ/는 탓으로, Vst + -(으)ㄴ/는 탓이다
is because of, due to [the fault of], on account of

Examples:
The fact that children have no manners is the fault of improper home education.
The fact that children have no manners is the fault of improper home education.
Maybe it’s because she only spends time with her mother, but she terribly shy compared to other kids.
The house is so dirty because their mother isn’t around.

(29) 터 relationship, friendship, terms, footing; a circumstance; plan, schedule; expectation, anticipation, intention
Note that both 되 and 데 occur interchangeably, although 되 is more likely to be encountered in written language, and 데 is more likely to be found in spoken language. The form in 데 is due to the vowel of original 되 assimilating under the influence of the following copular 이다: 되+이다 → 데다, etc.

이 is the intention/expectation to he/do; is going to, will likely; is expected/supposed to

A contraction from -(으)르 + 되 + -(이)라, this pattern expresses an intention or plan. Note that this pattern occurs almost exclusively in the Intimate (해) and Plain (한다) Styles. The meaning of intention or plan appears to be limited to first-person statements and second-person questions, whereas sentences with third-person subjects carry the meaning of supposition or anticipation (I think/reckon he/she/it…).

Examples:
난 바빠서 먼저 갈 데다.
I'm busy, so I'm going to take off first.

나도 엽마를 따라갈 데다.
I'm going to go with mom, too.

이번에는 꼭 우승을 하고 말 데다.
This time I determined to come out victorious.

또 다시 이런 일을 할 데다, 안 할 데다?
Are you going to do this again? Or not?

오늘 중으로 이 일을 마치고 갈 데다.
I determined to finish this job within the day.

since it is the expectation/intention that …

This is a combination of two patterns. The first is the pattern above in -(으)르 데 (이)라 where the post-modifier 데 means intention; expectation, and the second is the Imminent Elaboration pattern in -(으)르 -(으)로 데 (으)라 meaning given the circumstance that … or in view of the circumstance that … [I have something more to say, namely (see page 264)].

Examples:
매가 소를 햇대 라면이라도 드세요.
You must be hungry — why don't you eat some ramen or something?

순남이 올 데에 밥리 준비하세요.
The guests will be arriving so hurry up and get ready!

그쪽 방향으로 갈 데다 같이 갑시다.
I'll probably be going in that direction, so let's go together.

김 선생을 만나야 할 데 어디 제신지 모르겠어요.
I'm probably going to have to meet with Mr. Kim, but I have no idea
where he is.
거긴 길이 미끄러울텐데요.
The roads there will probably be slippery [and I could elaborate — be careful!]

Vst + -(으)로 했면
if it is the expectation/intention that...
This is a combination of the patterns in -(으)로 했 (이) 다 mean intention; expectation, and the conditional in -(으)면 meaning if ... (see page 302).

Examples:

입을 할 때면, 끝까지 해 와요.
If you're going to do the work, do complete job of it.

반대할 때면 반대하라지, 결말 것 없이.
Tell her that if she's going to oppose it, she should go ahead and oppose it — there's nothing to be afraid of.

혼자 산 때면 혼자 삶라고 하세요.
Tell him to go ahead and live by himself if he so intends.

배럴 때면 때려봐, 나도 가만히 있는 것을 테니까.
Hit me, if you will — [but] I'm not just going to take in sitting down.

이를 때면 도시의 인구집중 같은 거 말이에요.
What I mean is, so to speak/as it were, a kind of urban population concentration.

Vst + -(으)로 했어요.
of course, it is the expectation/intention that ...; it is the expectation/intention that ..., right?

This pattern is a combination of the pattern in -(으)로 했(이) 다 and Suppositive - 저는. As such, it is used to express (or ask for confirmation of) a near-certain conviction or supposition on the part of the speaker.

Examples:

we're bound to get some sort of news from him by tomorrow.
그가 지금은 미국에 도착했을 테죠.
He must have arrived in the US by now.

방안이 이면을 추우니까, 밖은 더 추울 테죠.
If it's this cold indoors, it must be even colder outdoors.

여러 번 말했으니까, 이제 말할을 테죠.
I told her several times, so she must have understood by now.

그 아이가 지금은 어른이 되었을 테죠?
She must have grown up by, don't you think?

(30) 변 side, direction, inclination, preponderance, alternative

Vst + -(으)로/는 변(이다)
is on the ... side; does or is rather ...
The word 변 denotes a side or direction. In its function as a post-modifier, 변 indicates that a quality or action inclines toward or approximates one direction out of various possibilities.

Examples:

오늘 날씨는 어제보다 덜 추운 편이에요.
Today's weather is rather less cold than yesterday [lit. : is on the less cold side].

동생보다 형의 마음이 더 가르고운 편인가 싶어요.
It seems the older brother is rather more easy-going in spirit than the younger brother.

그 사람은 평등한 편도 아니고 마른 편도 아니에요.
He neither on the fat side nor on the skinny side.

그 사람은 다른 사람에 비해서 책을 많이 읽는 편입니다.
He reads rather more books than others [lit: compared to other people, he is on the reading-a-lot-of-books side].

노력이 비해 결과가 그리 좋지 않은 편입니다.
Compared to the effort put in, the results are not so great [are on the good side].
(31) 한 limit, end-point

AVst +-는 한
as far as, to the limit that; (NEG+) unless

Examples:
제가 도울 수 있는 한 돕겠습니다.
I'll help you to the best of my abilities/as much as I can.

노력하지 않는 한 성공은 불가능하다.
Success is impossible unless you work hard at it.

내가 밥을 줄는 한이 있어도 그 책은 사야겠다.
I have to buy that book, even if it means [‘having the limit of’] skipping meals.

정사를 계속 하는 한 먹고 사는 건 걱정이 아니에요.
As long as I continue doing business, day-to-day survival is not a worry.

나한테 사과하지 않는 한 용서할 수 없어요.
Unless he apologizes to me, I cannot forgive him.

2) Free Forms which also function as Bound Nouns/Post-Modifiers

Whereas the bound forms or post-modifiers treated in section (3) above tend not to be able to function as free forms, there is also a class of post-modifiers which consists of nouns which can occur as both bound and free forms. Because nouns like these often take on special grammatical usages and nuances when used as post-modifiers, they are a potential source of confusion for the foreign learner. Below are a few such dual-purpose nouns with examples of their usage.

(1) 관계 relationship, bearing, connection

Noun + 관계로
in connection with, as a result of, because of

Examples:

We apologize for any inconvenience caused in connection with the construction work.
He’s gone out in connection with registration business.
They say they’re postponing today’s competition on account of inclement weather.

A rift entered the friendship between the two of them on account of business.

I see we have no choice but to give up our trip on account of the travel expenses.

Vst +- (으)로/-는 관계로
in connection with, as a result of, because of

Examples:

On account of the lack of rain, the citizens are suffering a drinking water problem.
Due to the lack of time, I’ll just tell you what I’ve called about.

Because it’s the weekend today, the traffic is even worse than usual.

Construction has been suspended on account of insufficient budget.

(2) 길 road, way, course
The original meaning of 향 is road, but as a post-modifier it typically occurs after verbs of motion like 가다 and 오다.

AVst + -는 길이다, AVst + -는 길에
in the midst of a way/course/process, incidental to a course of action; on the/one way, while, when, as, on the occasion (of), as a side event (to)

Examples:
어디 가는 길이세요?
Where are you on your way to?
저는 지금 학교에 가는 길입니다.
I'm on my way to school.
침에 놓아 오는 길에, 시장에서 물건을 삐어요.
I bought some things at the market on the way home.
영화 보러 가는 길에, 식사도 하려고 합니다.
I intend to eat on the way to see the movie, too.
외근하는 길에 다방을 들려 친구를 만나야 합니다.
On the way home from work I have to stop at a tea house to meet a friend.

NB: This pattern can also be used with the connective endings -(으)니까 and -(으) 라는:

Examples:
검심하러 나가는 길이니까 나중에 얘기하죠.
I'm just on my way out to get lunch, so let's talk later.
지금 시내에 나가는 길인데, 같이 가시겠어요?
I'm just on my way downtown now; would like to come with me?

(3) 끝 the end, conclusion, finish

Noun 끝에 and AVst + -(으) 라는 끝에
(as) the final consequence of doing; in the end, after doing; as a result of doing

These two patterns imply that the result in the second clause is an expected or natural one, but that it was achieved only with much effort and/or hardship.

Examples:
행 길에 처음이 시작되었습니다.
After exchanging words, they came to blows.
그 문이 과로 길에 쓰러져서 방원에 임현했습니다.
He collapsed from overwork and was hospitalized.
낮동안 공리하던 길에 사표를 제출했습니다.
After giving the matter much thought, she tendered her resignation.
고생 길에 낙이 오는다는 말이 있습니다.
There is a saying to the effect that "After suffering comes joy."
여기저기 해편 길에 찾아왔어요.
After wandering about here and there, I found it.

(4) 날 day

AVst + -는 날에는
on days when...; the day that...
This pattern expresses a condition for an extreme situation, or a condition accompanied by tension: should such a [tension-inducing and extreme] thing ever happen... Thus, it is typically used in cases where the then-clause expresses an extreme supposition.

Examples:
책 정쟁이 일어나는 날에는 모든 세상이 채가 될 걸.
The day a nuclear war breaks out, the whole world will probably turn to ashes.
향소가 성을 내는 날에는 아주 무섭다구요.
It's really scary when the bull gets angry.
마드리가 사무로 놀 바에 나는 날에는 글건이죠.
The day the daughter-in-law falls out of favor with her parents-in-law, that's the end.
If you run around half-crazy like that, once you fall you'll get badly hurt.

Once my brother loses his temperature, he really flies off the handle.

(5) 다 time

**Examples:**

저녁에 및 시점에 돌아가십니까?
Are you returning home in the evenings?

요일 손에서 식사를 할까요?
Where shall we eat lunch[-time]?

고등학교때 열심히 공부해야 합니다.
You have to study hard when you are a high school student.

방학때 경주로 여행가고 싶습니다.
I'm planning to travel to Kyongju during the vacation.

초등학교때가 제일 즐거웠습니다.
My elementary school days were the most enjoyable.

**Examples:**

이 제임하는 도중에 문이 나갔습니다.
There was a blackout while I was working.

우리가 시대로 가는 도중에 차 사고가 난습니다.
We had an accident as we were on our way downtown.

달이 밝는 도중에 카페를 지 마세요.
Don't interrupt while others are talking.

식사하는 도중에 말을 많이 하지 않는 것이 한국 예절입니다.
It is considered Korean etiquette not to talk a lot during meals.

수업 도중에 하품하는 학생들이 가끔 있습니다.
There are sometimes students who yawn in ['the middle of'] class.

(7) 마당 yard; plac

**Examples:**

가끔 친구에게 전화할 때가 있어요.
There are sometimes occasions when I call my friends.

(6) 도중 the midst, before finishing

Noun 도중에 and AVst + -는 도중에
(in) the midst of doing, while doing; before finishing

These patterns are slightly different from the patterns in -는 중이다 and Noun+중, in that they imply that a new event occurs while the event in the first clause is in progress, in effect replacing or interrupting the original activity. The patterns with 중 imply that the activity in the first clause continues uninterrupted.

**Examples:**

제가 임하는 도중에 문이 나갔습니다.
There was a blackout while I was working.

우리가 시대로 가는 도중에 차 사고가 난습니다.
We had an accident as we were on our way downtown.

달이 밝는 도중에 카페를 지 마세요.
Don't interrupt while others are talking.

식사하는 도중에 말을 많이 하지 않는 것이 한국 예절입니다.
It is considered Korean etiquette not to talk a lot during meals.

수업 도중에 하품하는 학생들이 가끔 있습니다.
There are sometimes students who yawn in ['the middle of'] class.
Since when is it OK for you to goof around when everybody else is working?

Who am I to trust when I don’t even trust myself?

Seeing as everyone and his uncle is working towards ‘globalization’ we should make an effort, too.

How can you go tooling around in a car when we can hardly eat properly?

We’re in a life-or-death situation, and you’re quarreling over a petty thing like this?

모양 appearance

appears or seems to be doing/to have done or be/to be going to do

Examples:

Seems the meeting finished early today.

[Now that I look outside, ] looks like rain.

Looks like Mr. Kim is sick.

She seems to be very busy lately.

It appears there isn’t anybody living in that house.

바람 impetus, momentum, influence

Examples:

It’s not expensive, but on the other hand, it doesn’t seem to be of high quality.

The pay in that job is good, but on the other hand it appears the work is difficult.
In life there are hard times, but then again, there are also good times. He talks a good talk, but on the other hand, he never holds grudges against others.

Examples:

Work hard and you shall succeed.
If you've borrowed money, it is only natural that you should pay it back.
Crime begets punishment.
It's hot in summer, and cold in winter [such is the natural order of things].
Treat others as you would be treated yourself [lit.: It is in the natural order of things that one is treated as one does unto others].

Examples:

It hardly seems likely they would just let them starve. You can chew her out as much as you like, but she never shows her temper.
Is there any reasonable expectation that monkeys never fall from trees? Since when is there a law [dictating] that women have to do the housework? Is there some law against smoking in front of one elders? [Since when is it reasonable to expect an injunction against...?]

Examples:

He's been overdoing it at work, so in all likelihood he'll suffer a physical breakdown.
Insofar as he was frequenting entertainment establishments as a ['with the social status of a'] student, it stands to reason that he'll be expelled from school.

Examples:

[If you lie!] You have to lie in a believable way ['in such a way that it makes sense or stands to reason'] — Who's going to believe that?

This pattern typically occurs in the negative with 둘다 not does/doesn't do, but can occur with it in rhetorical questions.
He said something that might touch off some ill feelings, so it stands to reason they get angry.

(12) 사이 space, interval

Note that 사이 can abbreviate to 사이.

1 사이 as post-modifier.

Vst + (으) 큰 사이에 while, during the time that: when, after

Examples:

Weren't there any calls while I was out?
The burglar entered while the house was empty.

2 사이 as post-noun. As a post-noun, 사이 can mean either an interval (of elapsed time) or a relationship together or between.

Noun 사이에

interval (of elapsed time); relationship together

Examples:

I was so busy I didn't have a spare moment ['interval'] to call you.
Looks like a friend came and went while I was catnapping ['during the interval when I just briefly napped'].

1 site as post-noun. As a post-noun, 사이 can mean either an interval (of elapsed time) or a relationship together or between.

Examples:

I've been friend with him since a long time ago. ['My relationship with him has been one of friendship since long ago'].

In our [close] relationship we can't be paying separately for every cup of tea.
Since when do spouses keep track of wins and losses? ['Since when is there such a thing as winning and losing in the relationship of husband-and-wife?']
Our relationship is above and beyond that of brother-to-brother.

(13) 색 calculation, conjecture, supposition;

The pattern below expresses the speaker's conjecture about or evaluation of an fact or event, but can also be used by the speaker to express, for convenience's sake, a presumption about an event even when (s)he knows it not to factually so: for all practical purposes as far as I concerned,...

Vst + (으) 큰 색이다 accounting (for): judgement based on appearances, to all appearances indications, that one might call... intention, idea, expectation; for all practical purposes as far as I concerned,...

Examples:

I guess I can assume that, that student studying harder compared to you.
I'm thinking of moving house sometime next year.
Next week is exams: I guess this semester is all but over.
You won once and I won once, so I guess that makes us even.
I'Ve paid off 90% of the debt, so I guess you could say I'Ve paid it all.

This pattern is used when the speaker wishes to (usually quite arbitrarily) rationalize or justify an event or course of action. Note that the pattern frequently occurs with -고.

**Examples:**

부모를 비롯 자식인데, 자식이 없는 생치세요.

He has abandoned his [own] parents, so you can assume you have no children yourself.

제수하는 생치고 1년 흥학하기로 했어요.

I told myself I would take time to study for the university entrance exams again, and decided to drop out of school for a year.

원금을 안 받은 생치고 몇우 이웃을 돕기로 했어요.

Pretending I was forgoing my salary, I decided to help out those less fortunate than me.

천구에게 속는 생치고 돈을 꾸어 주었어요.

Assuming I was being cheated by my friend, I lend him the money.

운갑을 비롯 생치고 한복을 만들여 봤어요.

Half-assuming I would ruin the material, I tried my hand at making a hanbok.

(14) 일

The following pattern is used to express a past experience.

**Examples:**

I've been up that mountain before.

I learned to ski once, too.

Have you ever failed the university entrance examination?

It seems I met her once.

In the following examples with -는, this pattern expresses a recurring habitual action, an ever-present possibility, or an action that never happens. (Note that the 도 is more or less redundant in the first three examples.)

**Examples:**

I sometimes go to the church on Sunday, too.

Do you sometimes play billiards at the pool hall?

She never gets angry.

(15) 정도 degree, grade, extent

**Noun 정도**

to the degree or extent of Noun

**Examples:**

I sometimes go to the church on Sunday, too.

Do you sometimes play billiards at the pool hall?

She never gets angry.
son with others. Usually this post-noun and post-modifier is followed by
the particle로, but one also finds it followed by other particles.

Examples:
어머니가 화를 내실 정도라면, 얼마나 나쁜 일이었는지 알 수 있
어요.
If [it was to the extent that] mother got angry about, I can imagine how
awful it must have been.
기술자가 할 수 있는 정도로는 불가능하지만 최선을 다해 보겠습
나다.
It's beyond the abilities of a [mere] technician, but I'll do my best. [Lit.: For the extent possible of a technician it is impossible, but…]
인사불성이 될 정도로 술을 마시면 되겠습니까?
Do you think it is acceptable to drink yourself into a coma? [Lit.: to the point of becoming unconscious]
고등학교 정도의 학력이면 취직할 수 있습니다.
It is possible to find work with a high school-level educational back-
ground.
이무리 술을 못해도 먹주한 친 정도야 하겠지요.
However poor you may be at drinking, surely you can handle [the extent of] a glass of beer?

(16) 지경 [lamentable/adverse] situation, condition, circumstance

Note that the situation or circumstance referred to in this pattern is
typically one which causes trouble or discomfort, and in general has
adverse repercussions.

AVst +-(으) 큰 지경이다
is in the [lamentable/adverse] situation, condition, circumstance of
being about to…

Examples:
나무 피곤해서 쓰러질 지경입니다.
I'm so tired I could collapse.

(17) 동 as a consequence/result of (something disturbing)

1 AVst +-는 동에
as a consequence/result of doing, under the influence of …

This pattern is used when the speaker regards the contents of the noun
or clause preceding 동 to be severe or disturbing, and the following
clauses typically exercises an adverse effect. In general, this pattern is
similar to that in 바람에.

Examples:
친구들이 부드는 동에, 아무 말도 못 들었어요.
Because of all the noise my friends were making, I couldn't hear a thing.
그 사람이 혼한 둔에 내가 양보를 했지요.
I gave in because he was being so stubborn.
여러가 화를 내는 동에, 나도 화가 난지요.
Because my wife was angry, I got angry, too.
문이 닫히기 전에선 하는 동에 자주 손을 다쳤습니다.
She injured her hand because the doors kept closing suddenly.
문고 놀 새 없이 바쁘게 일하는 동에 시름을 잃어 버렸어요.
We were so busy working at full tilt that we lost the document.

2 Noun + 동에
as a consequence/result of NOUN, under the influence of (some-
ting disturbing)
The number of nouns which can occur with 동에 in this construction

어제는 배가 고파서 족을 지경이었어요.
Yesterday I was so hungry I could have died.
물건 값이 너무 비싸서 기가 막히 지경이었어요.
Things are so expensive it just amazes me.
두 사람이 이혼할 지경에 이른 것은 아니에요.
Things haven't yet reached the stage where they might divorce.
보기만 해도 좋아 족을 지경이박아요.
It would appear she is thrilled to bits just looking at them.
is quite restricted.

**Examples:**
- The family split up as a result of/in the chaos of the war.
- They lost their house amidst all the confusion.
- In all the confusion, I left without the documents.

(18) 후 afterwards, later (on)

**Noun 후**

*after the Noun*

Action Base- - 후

*after (doing)*

This pattern is synonymous with the patterns in - (을) 뒤(에) and - (을) 다음에 *.

**Examples:**
- 접심을 먹은 후에 잠깐 쉬어요.
  I rest a bit after eating lunch.
- 계획을 세운 후에 실천에 옮기세요.
  After you’ve made the plans, put them into practice.
- 수술을 받은 후부터 몸이 건강해졌습니다.
  Ever since having my operation I [my body] have become healthier.
- 식사 후에 다시 전화하도록 하지요.
  I’ll make a point of calling you after supper.
- 잠시 후에 다시 뵐겠어요.
  I’ll see you shortly.

* The opposite of these after-patterns is the before-pattern in -기 전(에).

**Examples:**

나는 외출하기 전에 점심을 먹겠어요.
I’ll eat lunch before I go out.
약을 먹기 전에 먼저 진찰을 받으세요.
You should get yourself examined before taking any medicine.
Chapter Three

Pronouns

Pronouns are used in the place of words for people, places and things. Korean pronouns can be divided into personal pronouns and demonstrative pronouns.

1. Personal Pronouns

The personal pronouns in Korean include honorific expressions, a characteristic feature of the Korean language. Thus, according to the degree of honorification or politeness expressed, pronouns can be divided into Honorific (High) (높임말), Plain (Regular) (예시말) and Deferential (Low) (낮춤말). In the third person, we can also distinguish interrogative—indefinite and indeterminate pronouns. By ‘interrogative—indefinite pronoun’ is meant a pronoun which designates a person whose identity is unknown, and by ‘indeterminate pronoun’ is meant a pronoun which vaguely designates someone or anyone out of a group. Observe the following chart. (see page 210).
### Personal Pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1인칭</strong> 1st Person</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLAIN</td>
<td>나</td>
<td>우리(들)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFIC Honorific</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>저</td>
<td>저희(들)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>We</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEFERENTIAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **2 인칭** 2nd Person |                |              |
|PLAIN | 너                | You          |
|IFIC Honorific |              |              |
|        | Mr., Mr., You, You, Sir | You(들) |
|        | Mr., Mr., You, You, Sirs |니(들) |
|DEFERENTIAL |              |              |

| **3인칭** 3rd Person |                |              |
|PLAIN | 이, 그                 | 이, 그         |
|IFIC Honorific |              |              |
|        | This, That or That person |These, or Those people |
|        | 이, 그                 | 이, 그         |
|        | This or That Person |These or Those people |
|DEFERENTIAL |              |              |

### Examples:

I bought some shoes.
I met him ['that esteemed person']

Where do you work?

We do the work personally, or We do the work ourselves.

Who spoke in Intimate Style to whom?

There is no one in the classroom.

### 2. Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns stand in the place of expressions for places or things. Depending on the distance from the speaker and hearer, we can distinguish proximal (close to the speaker), medial (closer to the hearer or else mentioned in or known from earlier discourse) and distal (equally far from both speaker and listener) pronouns.
Some of these pronominal expressions undergo abbreviation when they combine with particles; these abbreviations are common in colloquial speech.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Things</th>
<th>Places</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>근정</td>
<td>이것</td>
<td>여기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proximal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>중정</td>
<td>그것</td>
<td>거기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>원정</td>
<td>저것</td>
<td>저기</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>미정</td>
<td>무엇, 어느 것</td>
<td>어디</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative, Indefinite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부정정</td>
<td>아무 것</td>
<td>아무래</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indeterminate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

이것이(이게) 내 책입니다.
This is my book.

그것이(그게) 무엇입니까?
What is that?

아무 것도 없어요.
There is nothing, or I have nothing.
Numerals are words which designate the quantity or sequence of nouns. Thus, we can distinguish cardinal numerals (양수사) and ordinal numerals (서수사).

1. Cardinal Numerals

Cardinal Numerals are the basis and building blocks for all other numerical concepts.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arabic Numbers</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
<th>Arabic Numbers</th>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>Chinese</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>하나</td>
<td>일</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>은</td>
<td>오십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>둘</td>
<td>이</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>오순</td>
<td>오십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>셋</td>
<td>삼</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>일순</td>
<td>일십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>넷</td>
<td>사</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>일천</td>
<td>일십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>다섯</td>
<td>오</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>여든</td>
<td>여십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>여섯</td>
<td>육</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>여천</td>
<td>여십</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>일곱</td>
<td>칠</td>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>백</td>
<td>백</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>여덟</td>
<td>팔</td>
<td>10,000</td>
<td>만</td>
<td>만</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>아홉</td>
<td>구</td>
<td>100,000</td>
<td>십만</td>
<td>십만</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1) Pure Korean Cardinal Numerals (한글 양수사)

Pure Korean numerals occur in sentences in combination with particles, or in combination with dependent nouns denoting units (counters or classifiers). When occurring with classifiers, numerals precede the classifier as modifiers; in some cases, the pure Korean numeral takes on an altered form as a modifier.

**Examples:**
- 셔 하나를 주세요. (numeral)
  Please give me a loaf of bread.
- 셔 한 개를 주세요. modifier (numerical modifier)
  Please give me a loaf of bread.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardinal Numeral</th>
<th>Modifier Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>하나</td>
<td>한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들</td>
<td>두</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>셔</td>
<td>세</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷</td>
<td>네</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯</td>
<td>다섯</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>·</td>
<td>·</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>엽</td>
<td>엽</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물</td>
<td>스물</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물하나</td>
<td>스물한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>스물둘</td>
<td>스물두</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For all numerals above 99, Chinese character-based vocabulary are used.*

There are also circumstances where two or more numerals combine to form an approximate numeral; here, too, the form of the numeral(s) may undergo certain changes.

**Examples:**
- 커피 한두 잔
  one or two cups of coffee
- 책 두 세 권
  two or three books
- 엽 필 서너 자루
  three or four pencils
- 사과 너겟 개
  four or five apples
- 국수 마리섯 그릇
  five or six bowls of noodle
The pure Korean numerals for counting days and dates are as follows:

| 1  | 하루 (조하루) *          | 11 | 열하루       |
| 2  | 아들                      | 12 | 열아들       |
| 3  | 사흘                      | 13 | 열사흘       |
| 4  | 나흘                      | 14 | 열나흘       |
| 5  | 딸새                      | 15 | 열딸새 (보름) *|
| 6  | 엄새                      | 20 | 슈우달       |
| 7  | 이레                      | 21 | 슈우하루       |
| 8  | 여래레                     | 28 | 슈우여래레     |
| 9  | 아호래                     | 29 | 슈우아호래     |
| 10 | 열흘                      | 30 | 그믐 *       |

*‘조하루’ designates the first day of a month, and ‘그믐’ the last day of a month.
*‘보름’ can mean either the 15th day or a 15-day period.

**Examples:**
오늘은 5월 조하루예요.
Today is the first of May.
부산에 가서 사흘 있을 거예요.
I’ll be going to Pusan for three days.
정월 보름은 대보름이라고 해요.
The fifteenth of January is called Taeborum.
아파서 보름 동안 회사에 못 나갔어요.
I couldn’t go to work for fifteen days because I was sick.
내일이 그믐인데 채급 다 내야요?
Tomorrow is the last day of the month; have you paid all your taxes?

2) Sino-Korean Numerals (한자어 양수사)

Sino-Korean numerals differ in some aspects of their usage from pure Korean numerals. For example, only Sino-Korean numerals can be used with nouns like 년 year, 월 month, 일 day, or with foreign loan words or for counting money, etc.

**Examples:**

| 1986년 2월 21일 | 천구백팔십육년 이월 이십일일 |
| February 21st 1986 | 사십일품 |
| 41쪽 | 산십일품 |
| 1,390원 | 천三百일육원 |
| 1,390 won | 천삼백육원 |
| 제 56과 | 제오십육과 |
| Lesson 56 | 삼사 개월 |
| 3 or 4 months | 사 개월 |
| 4인분 | 사 인분 |
| 4 portions (4 servings) | 육백 그램 |
| 600그램 (g) | 육백 프론 |
| 600 grams | 육백 그램 |
| 25킬로미터 (km) | 이십오 킬로미터 |
| 25 kilometers | |

2. Ordinal Numerals

Ordinal numerals are words which show the order or sequence of nouns.

1) Pure Korean Ordinal Numerals (한글 서수사)

Pure Korean ordinal numerals follow the pattern ‘cardinal numeral’ + (번)째’, and designate the order of number of times. The cardinal
numerals 하나 1, 둘 2, 삼 3, and 넷 4 in this pattern are replaced by 첫, 두(등), 세(셋) and 넷(넷), respectively. The ‘번’ is optional up to ‘9’ but obligatory from ‘10’ up.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>첫(번)째</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>두(번)째</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>세(번)째</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>넷(번)째</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>다섯(번)째</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>여섯(번)째</td>
<td>sixth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>일곱 번째</td>
<td>seventh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>여덟 번째</td>
<td>eighth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아홉 번째</td>
<td>ninth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>열 번째</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Sino-Korean ordinal numbers follow the pattern 제 + (Sino-Korean) cardinal numeral, and express a number or order.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>제일</td>
<td>First; Number One</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제이</td>
<td>Second; Number Two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제삼</td>
<td>Third; Number Three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제사</td>
<td>Fourth; Number Four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>제십</td>
<td>Tenth; Number Ten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>제백십이</td>
<td>One hundred and twelfth; Number One hundred and twelve</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Please open up to chapter six.

The 10th UN General Assembly is in session.

Korea is my second home.

He passed the examination on the first round.

Let’s not argue the pros and cons between us; let’s listen to a third party’s opinion.
Chapter Five

Verbs

Verbs are used as the predicate in a sentence, and play the role of saying something about the subject of the sentence. There are two main types of verb in Korean: action and descriptive. Action verbs denote actions, activities, motions or processes. Descriptive verbs (also called 'adjectives') denote qualities or states.

1. Action Verbs (동작동사)

Action verbs denote actions or processes.

*Examples:*

하Containing이 학교에 갔다.
The student goes to school.
비가 온니다.
It's raining.
아이가 밥을 먹었습니다.
The child is eating.
나는 노란색 옷을 입었습니다.
I wore yellow clothes.
강물이 흐릅니다.
The river is flowing.
2. Descriptive Verbs (상태동사)

Descriptive verbs denote qualities or states.

Examples:
- The prices in this department store are cheap.
- The weather is very nice today.
- There are lots of flowers here.
- That child is pretty.
- This color suits me.

Unlike action verbs, descriptive verbs have no command or suggestion (et.) forms. Moreover, action verbs can take the Plain Style declarative ending in '-라/-르', but descriptive verbs take only the declarative ending '이다' in the Plain Style. Thus, the Dictionary form in '이다', which has the same form as the Plain Style declarative ending, is not actually used in the case of action verbs (except in rare cases of poetic language).

Examples:
- The students are going to school.
- Eat lunch in the cafeteria!
- Let's study Korean diligently every day.
- This is good quality merchandise.
- That child has a very pretty face.

3. The Copula '이다'

The Copula '이다' functions to equate or link the subject of a sentence with a predicate noun. It can also denote that the subject of the sentence belongs to or is subsumed in/included in the predicate noun. It is usual for a noun to precede '이다', but sometimes a phrase or clause functioning as a noun can also appear in this position. Thus, the copula '이다' functions to allow nouns or noun-like expressions to act as predicate. This is why some Korean grammarians call the copula the redicative case marker.

Examples:
- I am Kim Yongsoo.
- This is a book.
- This book is a Korean language textbook.
- Today is Friday.
- Today's homework is up to page five.

The copula '이다' conjugates like a descriptive verb. Thus, it does not have a command or suggestion form, but takes declarative, interrogative and exclamatory endings. Of course, like other verbs, (whether descriptive or action), it can take a full range of connective endings, modifier endings and nominalizer endings, and can also combine with endings for tense and honorification.

Examples:
- He is a very good person.
- 아들이 괜찮아요?
Is your son a soldier?

“ 이것은 핫빵이구나.”

So this is new rice!

“ 이 것은 내 책임인데 모른척 하신가?”

This is your responsibility; are you trying to pretend not to know?

“ 아마 금년이 처음일 것이다.”

This year is probably the first time.

“네 말이 정확 사실이기를 바라.”

I hope what you say is the true facts of the case.

“네가 나의 열렬한 친구임을 고백하고 싶어.”

I want to confess that you are my eternal friend.

3 The Copula ‘-이다’ takes a number of special endings which are unique to it; these are the final endings for the speech levels Super Honorific (아주 높임) and Super Humble (아주 낮춤).

[예] ‘-(은)은-(는)다’, ‘-(은)로소이다’, ‘-(은)로다’, ‘-(은)로구나’

Examples:
- 산 위에 또 산이로구나.
  It's one mountain after another!
- 그것은 제 것이물시다.
  That is mine.
- 이는 제의 소위로소이다.
  This is my wish.
- 보아하나, 그는 틀림없는 선비(이)로군.
  Judging from appearances, I would say he is definitely a classical scholar.
- 그가 거짓말을 하더니 이상한 일이로다.
  He lied, you say? How strange.

4 The ‘-이’ of the copula can be dropped after nouns ending in a vowel.

Examples:
- 이것은 의자(이)다.
  This is a chair.
- 내가 양자(이)구나.

So you’re Yongja!

“키 작은 쪽이 언니(이)로군요.”

So the short one is the older sister!

“잘 맛있는 사과(이)네요.”

This is a really tasty apple.

“이제 여기 온 련지(이)야.”

This is the letter that came yesterday!

The negative of the copula ‘-이다’ is ‘-아니다’. Parallel with ‘-이다’, ‘-아니다’ conjugates similarly to a descriptive verb.

Examples:
- 그 일을 제가 한 일인데요.
  That is something I’ve got to do.
- 그럼 내가 저항할 일이 아니로군.
  Well then, it’s nothing I should worry about.
- 그 사람은 양심 없는 사람은 아닐 거예요.
  He is not someone who wouldn’t have a conscience.
- 학생인데 늘 집에서 놀어요.
  He may be a student, but he’s always goofing off at home.
- 이 기사는 사실이 아님.
  This news report isn’t fact.

4. The Verb ‘있다’

The verb ‘있다’ expresses existence, location or possession. In its meaning of ‘exist’, ‘있다’ has an honorific equivalent in ‘게시다’. In its meaning of possession, the honorific equivalent is ‘있으시다’.

Examples:
- 책이 책상에 있어서요.
  The book is on the table.
- 부모님 집에 계십니다.
  Her parents are at home.
The verb ‘있다’ shares features of both descriptive and action verbs. Thus, like other action verbs, ‘있다’ has a command form and a suggestion form. But sometimes it is also conjugated like a descriptive verb.

**Examples:**

-uru가 돌아올 때까지 나는 집에 있어.
  Stay home until we return!

- 이 기방을 좀 가지고 있어.
  Please hold this briefcase for a while.

- 밖에 나가지 말고 그냥 집에 있을 거다.
  Let’s not go out; let’s just stay home.

- 사장님의 요즘 한국에 안 계신데요.
  The president of the company is currently not in Korea these days.

- 돈은 있는데 시간이 없어 여행을 못 갔다.
  I have the money for travelling, but not the time.

5. **Verb Conjugation** (동사의 활용)

1) **What is Conjugation?**

Korean verbs are made up of bases and endings. The bases are constant, while the endings can take more than one shape. The notion of variable endings attaching to unvarying verb bases is called conjugation.

2) **Conjugation Classes**

Through conjugation, verbs can take on numerous different functions.

Depending on these functions, we can classify Korean verb conjugation as in Figure 9 below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Figure 9</strong></th>
<th><strong>Verb Conjugation</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Type</strong></td>
<td><strong>Base form</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Base form</strong></td>
<td><strong>동사형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Conjugation</strong></td>
<td><strong>명사형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inquisitive</strong></td>
<td><strong>명령형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proposition</strong></td>
<td><strong>접속형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Apperceptive</strong></td>
<td><strong>연결형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connective</strong></td>
<td><strong>비명사형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subordinate</strong></td>
<td><strong>비명사형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Helping</strong></td>
<td><strong>보조형</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nominal</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3) Conjugation and Suffixes

Verbs are made up of ‘Bases + Endings’ but there also suffixes which can enter between bases and endings and impart various grammatical functions to the verb form. Examples of such suffixes are those for passive, causative, honorific, tense, aspect, etc. When more than one such suffix occurs, the suffixes appear in a predetermined order. (See page 411).

*Examples:*

- 어머니께서 아이에게 밥을 먹이셨습니다.
- The mother fed the child.
- 어간 사동 존재 시점 여미

*base causal, honorific tense ending

- 김 신생은 회사에 갑다군요.
- My goodness! Mr. Kim went to the office!

*어간 시점 시상 여미

*base tense tense-aspect ending

4) Irregular Verbs (불규칙동사)

If we define ‘regular verbs’ as those verbs attach bases to endings without any changes in either the base or the ending, then ‘irregular verbs’ are those verbs which undergo unpredictable changes in the course of attaching base + ending. Some irregular verbs change or delete the final portion of their base, others add a phoneme, and yet others may experience a change in the form of an ending. Observe the following chart:
(Figure 10) Irregular Verbs (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irregular verbs</th>
<th>Types of change</th>
<th>Examples</th>
<th>Regular verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VERBS</td>
<td>Types of change</td>
<td>Examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-verbs</td>
<td>Types of change</td>
<td>Examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VERBS</td>
<td>Types of change</td>
<td>Examples</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

-verbs lose their a- in front of endings beginning with e, o, a; insofar as one can state this as a regular phonological rule, one could argue that this class of verbs is not really 'irregular'? However, because of the change to the shape of the verb base, we include them here with other 'irregular' verbs.

a-irregular verbs

The following verbs end in a-, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-어(아, 어)</th>
<th>-(으)면</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>낳다</td>
<td>낳아요</td>
<td>낳으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>떳다</td>
<td>떳아요</td>
<td>떳으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>죽어요</td>
<td>죽으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>잃다</td>
<td>잃어요</td>
<td>잃으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>걷다</td>
<td>걷어요</td>
<td>걷으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>설기</td>
<td>설어요</td>
<td>설으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>올다</td>
<td>올어요</td>
<td>올으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지어</td>
<td>지어요</td>
<td>지으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>지어</td>
<td>지어요</td>
<td>지으면</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

이제 갑기고 다 낯어요.
My cold is all better now.

 مساء 동을 가득히 부었어요.
She filled the glass full of liquor.

금을 두따로 그으면, 보기가 좋아요.
If you draw the line straight, it looks good.

이 줄을 어서 쓰시다.
Let tie this string together and use it.

집을 지어보면, 일마다 여러운 일인지 알게 됨.
If you ever build a house, you'll realize how difficult it is.

The following verbs end in a-, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>verb</th>
<th>-어(아, 어)</th>
<th>-(으)면</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>snatch</td>
<td>take it off</td>
<td>laugh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>채다</td>
<td>채다요</td>
<td>채다면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wash</td>
<td>comb</td>
<td>rise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

동생한테서 배앗은 게 뭐에요?
What did you snatch from your brother?

손을 깨끗이 씻으면 좋겠는데...
It'd be good if you washed your hands clean...
You look like a different person with your glasses off.
You've combed your hair pretty!
We laughed so much even our stomachs hurt.

-irregular verbs

-irregular verbs drop their ‘우’ before an ending beginning with a vowel, and then add ‘오’ or ‘우’. Usually ‘우’ is added, but the verbs help and beautiful add ‘오’ when followed by the ending ‘-어(아, 여)’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-어(아, 여)요</th>
<th>-(으)면</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>받갑다</td>
<td>받가워요</td>
<td>받가우면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고깝다</td>
<td>고마워요</td>
<td>고마우면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아름답다</td>
<td>아름다워요</td>
<td>아름다우면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>멋다</td>
<td>멋어요</td>
<td>멋으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>춤다</td>
<td>춤어요</td>
<td>춤으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>높다</td>
<td>높어요</td>
<td>높으면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>둥하다</td>
<td>도와요</td>
<td>도와면</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
When I am very pleased to see someone, I cry.
Thank you so much for last time.
I don’t like spicy food.
Look at that beautiful sky.

The kids help well.

The following verbs end in 우, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

- The following verbs end in 우, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-(으)면</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>입다</td>
<td>잔다 날다 엑타</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>뽑다</td>
<td>잔다 줄다 집다 붙잡다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:
Wear warm clothes.
Several people slept in the small room.
I put the baby on my back so it will fall asleep.
You mustn’t chew gum in the classroom.

-irregular verbs

-irregular verbs change their final 유 to 음 before endings beginning with a vowel.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-(으)면</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>걷다</td>
<td>걸어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>물다</td>
<td>물어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>들다</td>
<td>들어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>싶다</td>
<td>싶어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>길다</td>
<td>길어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>깊다</td>
<td>깊어요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples:
I walk from home to school.
If I ask, please answer.
Please tell it like you heard it.
I loaded a lot of luggage into the car.
Until you realize your mistake, please don’t say a word.

The following verbs end in -a, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

받다  달다  얻다
receive  close  receive
信念  문다  쓰다
believe  bury  pour

Examples:
Did you get any birthday presents?
I got a pretty pen from my friend.
Please bury your garbage in the ground.
If you close the door, dust can get in.
Please believe what I say.

The -a in 르-irregular verbs drops before the ending ‘아/어요’, and the  is doubled, in effect changing ‘아/어요’ to ‘라/어요’. Choice of ‘라/어요’

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>-아(이, 었)어요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>다르다</td>
<td>달라요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>따르다</td>
<td>빨라요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이르다</td>
<td>일리요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>시두르다</td>
<td>시들리어요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>낫다</td>
<td>날라요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고르다</td>
<td>굴라요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>부르다</td>
<td>불리요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>호르다</td>
<td>홀라요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>differ</td>
<td>be fast</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report; be early</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hasten</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transport</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>select</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

물건을 꽂라서 삽니다.
I select things before I buy them.
택시가 버스보다 훨씬 빨라요.
Taxis are much faster than buses.
동양과 서양은 생활습관이 달라요.
Asian and Western habits are different.
아무리 불리도 대답이 없어요.
No matter how I yell, there is no answer.
아버님 생신이 언제인지 물었어요.
I didn’t know when my father’s birthday was.
Examples:

What color do you like?

그리면. 언제 만날까요?

In that case, when shall we meet?

The following verbs end in *, but are regular, because they do not follow the rule above:

Examples:

Many people received invitations.
Adnominals are bound forms which cannot be used independently; instead, they always precede and modify another noun. One can distinguish three different types of adnominal:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adnominal Type</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative adnominals</td>
<td>이, 그, 저, 다른, 전 (this, that, that, other, previous/prior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerical adnominals</td>
<td>한, 두, 서너, 모든, 석 (One, two, three or four, all, three)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptive adnominals</td>
<td>새, 원, 엣, 갖은 (new, used, old, all sorts of)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Demonstrative Adnominals

Demonstrative adnominals point to or pick out a noun:

*Examples :*

이 아이는 제 동생입니다.
This child is my younger brother.
저 버스가 동대문에 갑니다.
That bus over there is going to Tongdaemun.
2. Numerical Adnominals

Numerical adnominals denote the quantity or sequence of the nouns they modify:

*Examples*:
- 셰 한 권에 얼마입니까?
  How much does one book cost?
- 세 여자가 모이면 어떻까요?
  What do you suppose it's like if three women meet?
- 여러 사람이 힘을 쏟면 모든 일을 쉽게 할 수 있어요.
  If several people combine their efforts, anything can be accomplished easily.
- 뭐니 뭐니 해도 건강이 첫째입니다.
  Say what you like, but your health comes first.

3. Descriptive Adnominals

Descriptive adnominals say something about the outer appearance or inner qualities or state of the noun they modify:

*Examples*:
- 나는 오늘 새 옷을 한 벌 차려입니 다.
  Today I bought a new set of clothes.
- 여름에는 날 생신을 조심하세 요.
  In summer, be careful with raw fish!
- 인간은 사회적 동물입니다.
  Man is a social creature.
- 꽃 나물 벼세가 상 gratuita요.
  The first vegetables of the season smell fresh.

There are occasions when an adnominal can be preceded by yet another adnominal, but in such cases the first adnominal does not modify the second; rather, both are in apposition, modifying the following noun.

*Examples*:
- 이 새 집은 세 친구(의) 집입니다.
  This new house is my friend's.
- 한 외 기러기가 날아가는구나.
  There goes a lone, wild goose flying away!
- 어느 한 남자가 집을 보러 왔겠어요.
  Some man or other ['a certain man'] came to see the house.
- 무슨 날 음식을 먹었길래 배탈이 냇니?
  Did you eat some raw food to give you a tummy ache? [lit. : What raw food did you eat to give you [such] a tummy ache?]
- 그런 민족적인 동기가 3.1운동을 일으키게 했다고 와요.
  It is my opinion that such a nationalist motivation gave rise to the March First Movement.
Chapter Seven

Adverbials

Adverbials can modify not only verbs, but also adnominals, numerals, pronouns, other adverbs, and entire sentences. Adverbs can be classified in one of two ways; according to their meaning, or according to their method of word-formation.

Examples:

- It's precisely because of you. (modifying a pronoun)
- I threw away the very old clothes. (modifying a verb)
- I live in the house right next door. (modifying an adnominal)
- I have just one desire. (modifying a numeral)
- Who is the student who came the earliest? (modifying an adverb)

1. Classification of Adverbs according to Meaning

1) Time Adverbs

Time adverbs denote relations of time.
Examples:

I met Mr. Kim in a tea house yesterday.
It's winter now so the weather will get colder.
I haven't been able to study lately because my head hurts.

Examples:

I went to the market with my mother yesterday.
Since we are done working, let's hurry home.

3) General Adverbs

General adverbs are very common, and each has its own peculiar meaning.

Examples:

We are all Yonsei University students.
Ms. Kim and Mr. Lee like each other.
Would you please give me some medicine? My stomach hurts.
Last night I barely slept three hours.
That kid studies well.
Since we are done working, let's hurry home.

The general adverbs such as so, to that extent, absolutely, particularly, quite, rather, and totally are always used with a negative verb.

Examples:

I don't want to meet him again.
That kid studies well.

Because of my stomach-ache, I couldn't eat a thing for breakfast.

I don't especially like that guy.

I will absolutely never do anything bad.

Now that I've just parted with my friend, I'm quite sad.

4) Degree Adverbs

Degree adverbs express a degree:

Examples:
그 사람은 노래를 아주 잘 부릅니다.
He sings very well.

가을은 가을보다 훨씬 더 춥습니다.
Winter is much colder than fall.

저는 적 오랫동안 고향에 가지 못했습니다.
I haven't been able to get back home for quite a long time.

김 선생은 영어를 매우 잘 합니다.
Mr. Kim speaks English rather well.

설악산의 경치는 매우 아름답습니다.
The scenery at Mt. Sorak is very beautiful.

2. Classification of Adverbs according to Method of Word-formation

In terms of method of word-formation, one can divide Korean adverbs into two types: adverbs which are etymologically just adverbs and are not derived from some other part of speech, and adverbs derived from other words (nouns, verbs, etc.) by means of a suffix.

Classification of Adverbs according to Method of Word-formation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-derived Adverbs</th>
<th>같이, 당연히, 정말로, 밀리</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Derived Adverbs</td>
<td>같이, 당연히, 정말로, 밀리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>together as a matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>truly far</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Non-derived Adverbs

Non-derived adverbs are adverbs which, etymologically speaking, have always functioned as adverbs and cannot be derived from some other word.

Examples:
여간, 오하려, 열른, 가끔, 다시,
quite, contrary to quickly sometimes, again, what one might think
늘, 이미, 벌써, 더, 꼭, 꽤……
always, already already, more very, fairly……

Examples:
그 소식을 벌써 들어 알고 있습니다.
I've already heard that news.

발보다 오히려 낮이 시원하다군.
Actually [contrary to what one might expect] the days were cooler than the nights.

고향에 가시게 되어 여간 기쁘시지 않겠습니다.
You must be really happy now that you have a chance to go to your hometown.

호리다가 가끔 한두 차례 비가 온 것입니다.
There will be periods of cloud interrupted by the occasional one or two showers.
44-2-4 4.
Stop hanging about and hurry up and follow me.

2) Derived Adverbs

Derived adverbs are adverbs formed by the suffixation of -이, -다, -하, -오/우, or -로' to a noun, verb stem, or the like.

Adverbial Suffix -이

1) Adverbial Suffix -이 can attach to verb stems to form adverbs:

- In the case of ㅂ Verbs (see page 108), the ㅂ drops:
  풀다 → 고이, 잡다 → 쉬이, 답습롭다 → 답습리
  beautiful easy attractive

Examples:
발가이, 세로이, 가까이, 외로이, 자유로이

gladly, newly, closely, lonely, freely

2) Adverbial Suffix -이 attaches to descriptive verbs other than those ending in 하하다 as follows:

- 없다 → 없이, 갑다 → 갑이, 갑다 → 갑이
  not exist be like be deep

Examples:
높이, 길이, 많이, 혼히, 바빠, 습히

high, long, much, vainly, busily, sadly

3) Adverbial Suffix -이 can attach to certain reduplicated morphemes:

- 번번 +이 → 번번이, 생생 +이 → 생생이
  'time' all the time 'pair' in pairs

Examples:

- Some words which are already adverbs optionally take an additional adverbial -이:

  일찍 +이 → 일찍이
  early

Examples:
이렇게, 안그러지, 빨리, 반듯이, 많이, мало, 많이, 반듯이

- Adverbial Suffix -이 attaches to verbs ending in ㅂ as follows:

Examples:

- not exist be like be deep

Examples:

- Some words which are already adverbs optionally take an additional adverbial -이:

  일찍 +이 → 일찍이
  early

Examples:

- Adverbial Suffix -이 attaches to verbs ending in ㅂ as follows:

Examples:

- not exist be like be deep

Examples:

- Some words which are already adverbs optionally take an additional adverbial -이:

  일찍 +이 → 일찍이
  early

Examples:
I'm deeply grateful for his help.

I inherited this from my grandfather, so I will treasure it for a long time.

Yet again I put myself in the debt of someone to whom I am always indebted.

In these times when things are changing with each passing day, put away your narrow-minded thinking.

The son squandered away all the money they had saved penny by penny.

This has never happened in our country before.

This jar was full to the brim with rice. Where has it gone?

Adverbial Suffix -리

This adverbial suffix occurs only with descriptive 뉘 verbs (see page 111). The forms are made by dropping the final 뉘 of the verb stem, doubling the 뉘, and adding -리.

Examples:
게으러, 널리, 배불리

lazily, widely, heartily

Examples:
거북이보다 토끼가 빨리 달리길
I'll bet you the rabbit runs faster than the turtle.

달리 보아 둘 신부감이 있습니까?
Do you have a different woman in mind that you plan to marry?

The one I love has gone far away.

Adverbial Suffix -히

This adverbial suffix attaches to descriptive Sino-Korean roots which can take -하다. The -하다 is replaced by -히 to derive the adverb. This particular suffix is highly productive.

Examples:
상당히, 자연히, 충분히, 안녕히, 귀히, considerably, naturally, sufficiently, peacefully, preciously, urgently, greatly

Examples:
느슨히, 곧돌히, 가득히, 물ynı, 알뜰히, loosely, intently, nimbly, meticulously, frugally, carefully, tightly, abruptly, slowly, obviously, fully, clearly, pitifully

Examples:
공손히 인사하는 법을 배워야겠구나.
You're going to have to learn to introduce yourself respectfully.

A great deal of time has passed since then, but I can't forget it.
Let’s take plenty of time to think about this problem.
He’s thinking intently about something.
I just don’t understand why you took it on, clearly knowing there would be a bad result.

Adverbial Suffix -(으)로
This adverbial suffix typically attaches to nouns.

Examples:

against one will, truthfully, truly daily, day by day

Examples:

Seoul’s appearance has, indeed, changed a great deal.
They said there would be showers at times today.

How do you expect me to do, against my will, something I don’t want to do?
Helping others is truly difficult.
Our company is growing by the day.

3) Interrogative~ Indefinite Adverbs and Negative Adverbs (이지침부사)

Interrogative~ Indefinite/Negative adverbs is a catch all for adverbs which can function either as interrogatives, or as negatives. Negative adverbs are these adverbs which convey negation or meanings of ‘not’, ‘not yet’, etc.

Examples:

나무가 죽 말랐을까요?
Why do you suppose the tree has dried up?
어디에 갔었어요?
Where have you been?
그 사람이 어디에 가고 있네요.
He has gone away somewhere.
염수가 아직 안 일어났니?
Hasn’t Yongsu gotten up yet?
 난 그 일 못 해.
I can’t do that.

4) Conjunctive Adverbs

Conjunctive adverbs (접속부사) function to connect or join word +word, or sentence+sentence. Historically, many of the conjunctive adverbs in Korean have their origins in various inflected forms of verbs like 그리고, thereby and thereby be so/ do so. However, now they function as separate and independent words. Examples of conjunctive adverbs are: 그리고, 그러나, 그리고, 그래서, 그런데, 즉, 곧, 및, 혹은, 또는, etc. Here we examine only a few of these adverbs.

그리고 And

□ This conjunct is used to conjoin a preceding sentence with a following sentence, regardless of the semantics of the sentences, or else is used to introduce a new, conjoined sentence which adds new content to the preceding sentence.
Examples:

The conjunctive adverb 그러나 is a concessive. That is, it concedes the contents of the preceding sentence, while prefacing a new sentence, the contents of which either gainsay or contrast with the contents of the first. Thus, it is similar in meaning to 빼지만 but.

Examples:

그 여자의 얼굴이 빼지 않습니다. 그러나 아침이 꺄지 않습니다.
That lady's face is unpleasant to look at. But she has a beautiful heart.
그 분은 몸이 가난한가능합니다. 그러나 마음은 부자입니다.
He is extremely poor. But in his heart he is wealthy.
오늘은 학교에 가는 날입니다. 그러나 집에서 쉬겠습니다.
Today is a school day. But I'm going to take a break at home.
벌써 밤 12시입니다. 그럼에도 아직 할 일이 많습니다.
It's already midnight. But there's still a lot to do.
나는 콜음식을 좋아합니다. 그럼에도 그분은 좋아하지 않습니다.
I like salty food. But that person doesn't.

그러면 If so; In that case; Then

The conjunctive adverb 그러나 expresses the idea that the preceding idea establishes a condition or prerequisite for the following sentence. The following sentence usually offers an explanation or explication of the preceding sentence.

Examples:

지금 몇 시일까요?
What time is it now?
오전 8시 30분입니다.
Eight thirty in the morning.
그러면 출근해야겠습니까.
In that case I've got to work.
오늘 시간이 있습니까?
미안합니다. 오늘은 좀 바쁩니다.
Do you have any time today?
I'm sorry. today I'm a bit busy.
In that case, how's tomorrow?
Mr. Chang, the students have come.
Really? In that case let's start class.
You're in the wrong place again, I'm sorry.
Mr. Chang, the students have come.
Really? In that case let's start class.
I don't digest milk very well.
Then order something else.
That restaurant is always busy.
Oh, is that right? Then let's make reservations before we go.

그레서 Therefore; So; Thus; That why

The conjunctive adverb 그레서 is used when the preceding sentence is a reason or cause for the following sentence.

Examples:
베가 아름다워. 그레서 물었습니다.
My stomach hurts. So I didn't eat.
물건 값이 비쌉니다. 그래서 사지 않았습니다.
The prices are expensive. So I didn't buy anything.
첫눈이 내렸습니다. 그래서 기분이 좋아요.
The first snow of the year has fallen. So I'm in a good mood...
그 분은 외국사람입니다. 그래서 한국말을 못합니다.
He's a foreigner. That's why he can't speak Korean.
이 점은 너무 무겁습니다. 그래서 혼자 들 수 없군요!
This bag is too heavy. That's why I can't carry it alone!

그럼에 Well; By the way; However; But; And yet
Last weekend I read a book. It was about the war.

Yesterday I met a friend of mine: turns out he's already married!

I bought a house last year; but it had lots of problems.

The conjunctive adverb 그래도 is yet another concessive. It concedes or acknowledges the contents of the preceding sentence, but stresses that the contents of the following sentence are nonetheless necessary.

Examples:

한국말이 어렵습니다. 그래도 배우겠습니다.
Korean is difficult. Nevertheless, I'm going to learn it.
오늘은 피곤합니다. 그래도 이 일을 끝내겠습니다.
I'm tired today. Still, I'm going to finish this work.
김치는 아주 벌줍니다. 그래도 한국 사람은 잘 먹습니다.
Kimchi' is very spicy. Nevertheless, Koreans eat a lot of it.
공부를 열심히 하지 않았습니다. 그래도 시험은 잘 봤습니다.
She didn't study hard. Nonetheless, she did well on the test.
내일은 토요일입니다. 그래도 출근해야 합니다.
Tomorrow is Saturday. But I still have to go to work.

The conjunctive adverb 그래니까 is used to preface a sentence which expresses a result following from the reason given in the preceding sentence.

Examples:

세상은 무서워요. 그래니까 말조심 하세요.
The world is a scary place. So be careful what you say.

Adverbials 135

The conjunctive adverb 그래니까 denotes that the contents of the second sentence are added to or simultaneously occur with the action or state in the first sentence.

Examples:

선생님이 이 책을 주셨습니다. 그래면서 내일까지 읽으라고 하셨습니다.
My teacher gave me this book and told me to read it by tomorrow.
어머님은 외출하셨습니다. 그래면서 좀 늦게 돌아오시겠다고 말씀하셨습니다.
Mother left, saying she would be home somewhat late.

요일이 너무 힘들다고 합니다. 그래면서 쉴게 해달라고 합니다.
He wants me to give him a break, saying the work is too hard.
내일은 예가 돌아 lagi 합니다. 그래서 저녁을 같이 먹자고 합니다.
She wants me to come over for dinner tomorrow as [she tells me] it is her child's first birthday.

그래서 알아도 As it turns out; As luck would have it; Wouldn't you know it; Even without that; Nevertheless; On top of that
The conjunctive adverb 

A conjunctive adverb prefaces a sentence when the speaker was just thinking a similar thought or was about to carry out the idea expressed in the preceding sentence. It can also be expressed as 

was intending to do, was just about to do, or 

wanted to do.

Examples:

There's some cola here; here, have some.

Actually, I was just about to go out and buy something to drink.

Could you please show me how to do this?

Actually, I was just going to ask the same thing myself.

You know, that's just what I was thinking.

Here are some flowers for you [to insert in a vase or something].

The grapes have ripened in rich clusters and look great.

The drone of his snoring sure is loud!

Examples:

가: 여기 콜라가 있으니 드세요.

나: 그렇지 않아도 음료수를 사려 가려고 했습니다.

가: 이것은 좀 가르쳐 주세요.

나: 그렇지 않아도 나도 이것을 봐보려던 생각이었어요.

가: 시간이 있으세요? 여행이나 갈건지다.

나: 그렇게 않아도 나도 그런 생각을 했는데...

가: 꽃 좀 봐주세요.

나: 꽃이야? 그러지 않아도 꽃을 사려고 했는데.

가: 김 선생님 계세요?

나: 어서 오세요. 그러지 않아도 한 번 봐보고 싶었어요.

가: 여기 나를 보고 반갑방곳 웃어요.

The baby sees me and beams a big smile.

The students are crowded close together doing something.

The grapes have ripened in rich clusters and look great.

The drone of his snoring sure is loud!

Examples:

가: 여기 나를 보고 반갑방곳 웃어요.

나: 이렇게 응경음과 보여서 웃 하고 싶어요.

가: 이것도 좋겠ляр 다음에 들려 보세요.

나: 이렇게 응경음과 보여서 웃 하고 싶어요.

가: 이것이 좋겠晔 다음에 들려 보세요.

Adverbials

Mimetic adverbs are adverbs which express the outer appearance, attitude, movements or sound of a thing or person. Korean grammatical terminology usually distinguishes two broad types of mimetic adverbs: 

or 'phenomimes' are adverbs which try to approximate with speech sounds an action or attitude. 

is used to exemplify or amplify the contents of the preceding word or sentence.

Examples:

They're different. Namely, it is a question of quantity and quality.
She's been coughing and hacking all day with this cold she's caught.

3. Adverbial Forms of Verbs via Inflection

Korean verbs can take the adverbative ending -게 and function adverbially. However, note that when a verb takes the ending in -게, it is still not completely a derived adverb. Rather, it functions as an adverb while retaining most of its verbal qualities. Thus, these forms are simply cases of the ending -게 attaching to the stems of basic verb forms in the lexicon. This ending is highly productive, and is compatible with nearly all descriptive verbs.

Examples:
- 크다 크게 크다 차다 차게 놓다 놓게
cold surprising

Examples:
- 놓르게 나르게 다르게
  Blue(ly) bad(ly) different(ly)

If he were to start a business, he would go far.
When you catch a cold, you should keep [your body] warm.

Fortunately Cholsu got over his cold.
A friend of ours has arranged to come over tomorrow.
Sometimes I go to the movies on weekends.

I ate too much this morning for breakfast.
Mr. Kim and Mr. Lee get along helping each other.

4. Position of Adverbials

The general rule for placement of adverbs in sentences is that they immediately precede the element they modify. Thus, sentential adverbs are placed at the beginning of a sentence, and adverbs which modify verbs or other adverbs are placed immediately in front of the appropriate verb or adverb. This is an important point, because if an adverb is inappropriately placed, the sentence in question can no longer properly convey its meaning.

Examples:
- 발표에 그 사람이 달리가 다 나왔습니다.
  Fortunately Cholsu got over his cold.
- 염마의 친구가 우리 집에 사과로 왔습니다.
  A friend of ours has arranged to come over tomorrow.
- 주말에는 가끔 영화 구경을 합니다.
  Sometimes I go to the movies on weekends.
- 아침에 밥을 너무 많이 먹었어요.
  I ate too much this morning for breakfast.
- 김 신생과 이 신생은 서로 도우면서 자밥니다.
  Mr. Kim and Mr. Lee get along helping each other.
Exclamations are a special class of non-inflecting words which cannot take particles after them. They are also special in that their position within a sentence is relatively free; thus, they belong to the set of ‘free forms’ Usage of exclamations falls into the three broad categories.

1. They express the instinctive surprise or emotion of the speaker.

*Examples:*

어머나, 벌써 점심 때가 되었네요.
Oh my, it's already time for lunch!

뭐, 사고가 났다고?
What? There's been an accident?

오/ 하나님, 감사합니다.
Oh God! Thank you.

아니, 누가 그런 말을 뭐요?
Wait a minute —, who said that?

아이고, 깜짝이야.
Jeez — you gave me a fright.

와, 경치가 그만이네요.
Wow! What splendid scenery!
142 Chapter Eight

아. 하늘에 별들이 반짝 반짝 빛나네요.
Say, the stars are sparkling brightly in the sky!
홍. 자기는 뭔 그렇게 부지런하다고.
Hmmph—since when does he think he’s so hard-working?
글래. 그래 사실이라면 쿨일이죠 뭐.
Hmmm... If that’s true, I guess we’ve got a big problem.

2. Exclamations are used to call or reply to others.

Examples:
여보세요, 나를 믿어보세요.
Please, all of you, try to believe me.
여보세요, 참가 만나세요.
Say, there—let’s get together briefly.
아, 네 이름이 영결이 맞지? 그러나보게 됨네.
Hey! Your name is Yongchol, isn’t it? You’ve grown so big I hardly recognized you.
예, 오늘 오전에 회의에 잘 가세요.
Yes, I’m going to the conference this afternoon.

3. Exclamations include words which are used as a sort of empty filler or hedge.

Examples:
저 문을 어디서 만났느라, 여, 생각이 안 나는는데.
Now where did I meet that guy. Uh, I just can’t remember.
과장님, 저, 이 일은 내일 해도 늦지 않겠죠?
Boss—um... tomorrow wouldn’t be too late for this, would it?
예, 이렇게 하면 어떨래? 응, 다음 주에 다시 의논하자.
Hey! How’s this? Umm, let’s discuss it again next week.
1. Case Particles (격조사)

Case particles are defined as those which impart a specific case relation to the noun preceding them. Korean has the following case particles: subject, object, complement, adnominal, adverbial and vocative.

1) Subject Particle (주격조사)

-이/가, -께서, -에서

The subject particle is used to mark the subject of a sentence. Nouns ending in a consonant take -이, while nouns ending in a vowel take -가.

*Examples:*

- 눈이 온다.
  It's snowing.
- 꽃이 예쁘다.
  The flower is pretty.
- 버스가 달린다.
  The bus is racing along.

- It is a question of living or dying.
- 택시로 가는 것이 더 빠릅니다.
  It's faster to go by taxi.

- The subject particle (격) is used to honorificate the subject. When this particle is used, it is usual to find the honorific suffix (오) 시 appearing on the verb as a kind of agreement marker. (See page 200).

- Father is in the middle of saying something.
- 김 선생님께서 력으로 가셨습니다.
  Mr. Kim has gone home.
- 사장님께서는 외출하셨어요.
  The boss has gone out.
- 김 선생님께서 어디에 사십니까?
  Where do you live?
- 할머니께서 집에 돌아 오셨어요.
  Grandmother is back.

- The subject particle (격) is used to denote corporate or institutional subjects.

*Examples:*

- 이번 경기는 우리 학교에서 우승을 했다.
  Our school won the last meet.
- 김 선생님께서 우리를 초대했습니다.
  The Kims have invited us.
- 정부께서 뭐라고 말씀하셨니까?
  What did the government say?

- In some case, Korean sentences allow two or more nouns to be marked with the subject particle. In such cases, the first noun functions as main subject of the entire sentence, while subsequent nouns function as the subject of a predicate clause.
Examples:
Cholsu has a good heart.
Sunhi has a pretty face.
The elephant has a long nose.
He became a doctor.
That's not Mr. Kim.

The 1st-person pronouns 나 and 저, the 2nd-person pronoun 너, and the interrogative-indefinite 누구 become 나가, 제가, 네가 and 누가, respectively, when they combine with the subject particle.

Examples:
나가 그 일을 했습니다.
저가 숙제를 했습니다.
저가 이제 나에게 전화를 했나?
누가 영어를 가르치나?
Who teaches English?

2) Object Particle (목적격조사)

-을/을

The object particle is used to mark the object of a sentence. Nouns ending in a consonant take 을, while nouns ending in a vowel take 을.

Examples:
그 문은 운동을 좋아해야요.
She likes sports.

나는 아침에 신문을 읽습니다.
I read the paper in the morning.
나는 이제 부모님께 편지를 써었습니다.
I wrote a letter to my parents yesterday.

The object particle can attach to other particles or to the long negative form to express emphasis. In such case, it is usual for to abbreviate to.

Examples:
몇 시쯤 집에 가세요?
About what time are you going home?
Do you stop at the market every day?

그 아이가 말을 잘 들지 않아요.
That kid [just] doesn't listen.

Both the subject and object particle can be omitted. This is especially common in colloquial speech.

Examples:
책(이) 어디 있니?
Where's the book?
그 사람이 의사님이야?
Is she a doctor?
3) Complement Particle (보격조사)

The complement particle has the same shape as the subject particle, but is different in its meaning and function. Nouns ending in a consonant take 이, while nouns ending in a vowel take 가.

Examples:
나는 아이가 아닙니다.
I am not a child.
그 학생은 3학년이 되었다.
She's a 3rd-year student now.
그건 제 책임이 아닌 것 같네요.
That doesn't seem to be my responsibility.

4) Adnominal Particle (관형격조사)

의 of, with respect to, pertaining to

The adnominal particle functions to join two nouns into a larger noun phrase. It is also commonly called the 'genitive particle' or the 'possessive particle'. Like the subject and object particles, the adnominal particle is often dropped, but there are also cases when it is obligatory.

Examples:
이건 누구(의) 안경이예요?
Whose glasses are these?
그 분(의) 직업이 뭐예요?
What's his profession?

5) Adverbial Particles (부사격조사)

Adverbial particles turn nouns and noun phrases into adverbials. Korean has a rich variety of adverbial particles depending on the nature of the noun and predicate of the phrase or clause in question. For convenience's sake, let us classify them in the first instance by general meaning, and then add further explanations according to usage. Note that, unlike the subject and object particles, adverbial particles are not normally dropped.

Examples:
예, -에게/한테, -개 to, at, for, by

Humans and animals take -에게 or -한테: -에 is used elsewhere.
Examples:

Cholsu waters the plants.

Don’t touch the tree.

I sent a birthday present to my friend.

Who are you writing a letter to?

So who’s going to tie the bell to the cat?

The particle -에 is the honorific equivalent of -에게 and 한테.

(See page 211).

Examples:

Ask the teacher.

I told my parents.

Please say hello to your grandmother for me.

You should greet elders first.

I wasn’t able to send an invitation to Mr. Pak.

The particle -에 marks the dative (-에, -에게/한테, -께) as well as several other functions.

In conjunction with a verb of motion, the particle -에 marks a goal.

Examples:

Yongsu went out to Inchon airport.

Examples:

I’m going to school.

Come to our place tomorrow.

This train arrives in Pusan tomorrow morning.

Did you send a letter back home?

When a verb other than a verb of motion is predicate, the particle -에 is used with nouns denoting spaces to mark spatial location.

Examples:

My parents live in my hometown.

Those clothes fit me perfectly.

This medicine is good for neuralgia.

When used in conjunction with nouns denoting time, the particle -에 marks temporal location: in, on, or at a certain time.

Examples:

I was at home on Saturday.

I’m going to Cheju Island in October.
152 Chapter Nine

여름에는 바닷가에 가요.
In the summer I go to the seaside.

The particle -에 can also mark the source of an action.

Examples:
바람에 나무가 쓰러졌습니다.
The tree fell down in the wind.

천둥소리에 갑자ожно 놀라요.
I was startled by [at] the sound of the thunder.

비에 몸이 흐泙 첫째군요.
My clothes have gotten completely soaked in the rain.

가문에 비가 다 말어요.
The rice plants all dried up in the drought.

그 친구는 병에 담군다고 있습니다.
That friend [of mine] is suffering from a disease.

When used in conjunction with nouns denoting numerals, the particle -에 marks a unit of value or proportion (at, in, for, by, per).

Examples:
그것을 엽마에 사셨어요?
How much did you buy that for?

이 물건은 한 개에 천원입니다.
This product costs 1000 won per unit.

일주일에 다섯에 일해요.
I work 5 days per week.

한 달에 한 번 출장 갔어요.
I go away on business once a month.

이 시기는 하루에 1분씩 들려요.
This watch loses one minute per day.

-에서, -에서/한테서 at, in (dynamic location)/from; from

The particle -에서 is used in conjunction with processive verbs and nouns denoting places to mark the location of an action.

Examples:

여디에서 일하시는가?
Where do you work?

한국에서 바지를 삽습니까?
I bought some trousers at the market.

한국에서 무엇을 하십니까?
What do you do in Korea?

한국에서 친구를 만났어요.
I met a friend on the street.

친구가 사무실에서 기타려요.
My friend is waiting in the office

The particle -에서 can also be used to mark a spatial or temporal point of departure.

Examples:

어느 나라에서 오셨어요?
What country are you from?

학교에서 몇 시에 집에 갔습니까?
What time do you come home from school?

열에서 일곱을 빼면 세가 됩니다.
Ten minus seven is three.

이 책은 도서관에서 가져 왔어요.
I brought this book from the library.

저는 여름 여가 시에서 일곱 시 사이에 일어남니다.
I wake up between six and seven in the morning.

In the meaning of from (paraphrasable in Korean as -(으)로부터), nouns denoting humans and animals take -에서/한테서, while all other nouns take -에서. The particles -에서 and -한테서 are interchangeable.

Examples:

나는 어머니에게서 그 말을 들었어요.
I heard that from my mother.

친구에게서 초대를 받았어요.
I was invited by my friend [I received an invitation from my friend.]
I'll borrow the book from Yongja.

개점하여 벽세가 나요.
The dog smells ['There is a smell emanating from the dog.'].

그 회사에서 배운 것이 많아요.

I learned many things from [or at] that company.

Like -에, the particle -에서 denotes places, but their usages are different, and thus they are not interchangeable. This is because choice of -에 vs. -에서 is determined by the predicate.

Examples:

학생들이 교실에 있습니다.
The students are in the classroom.

The students are studying in the classroom.

취가 처 구멍에 숨어 있어요.
The mouse is hiding in that hole.

취가 처 구멍에서 죽었어요.
The mouse died in that hole.

다방에 친구와 같이 갔어요.

I went to a tea house with a friend.

I met a friend at a tea house.

저는 이제 서울에 왔습니다.

I came to Seoul yesterday.

I was born in Seoul.

시장에 갑니다.

I'm going to the market.

I buy things at the market.

-(으)로 with, using, by means of; as, for, in the capacity of; (change of state) into; to, in the direction of; because of/due, owing to

The basic function of the instrumental particle -(으)로 is to denote the method, instrument or means by which a certain action comes about. Nouns ending in a final consonant (except ㄹ) take -으로, and nouns ending in a final vowel or ㄹ take -로.

Examples:

한국에 비행기로 왔어요.

I came to Korea by airplane.

한국 음식은 수저로 먹어요.

Korean food is eaten with a spoon and chopsticks.

 Eating with a spoon. I am painting a picture with a brush.

그 책은 나무로 만들었습니다.

That desk is made of wood.

목을 테이프로 한국말을 공부합니다.

I am studying Korean with tape recordings.

영어로 말씀해주세요.

Please say it in English.

말로 하고 편지 마세요.

Say it in words don't hit me!

The particle -(으)로 has other functions besides marking instrumentals.

1 In conjunction with verbs of motion, the particle -(으)로 can denote direction.

Examples:

어디로 가세요?

Where are you going? [in which direction are you heading?]

내일 유럽으로 떠나요.

I am leaving for Europe tomorrow.

그 버스는 종료로 가지 않아요.

That bus doesn't go to Chongno.

저는 남쪽으로 여행을 가겠어요.

I am going to travel south.
The particle -(으)로 can also denote a source or reason.

**Examples:**

무슨 일을 오셨어요?
Why have you come? In an account of what have you come?

저는 병으로 무척 고생했습니다.
I really suffered on account of my sickness.

그 사람을 교통사고로 많이 다쳤습니다.
He got really hurt in an account of a traffic accident.

I am losing my mind because of work at the office.

There are a lot of damage on account of the latest rain.

The particle -(으)로 can denote either the manner or an action or the end-point of a process of change.

**Examples:**

그 사람은 반가운 얼굴로 나를 맞이했습니다.
He greeted me with a happy face.

세로 악수로 인사를 나놓습니다.
We exchange greetings via a handshake.

이번 범은 마음으로 돌아 왔습니다.
I've come back now with a bright heart.

물이 열어서 얼음으로 변했습니다.
The water has frozen and turned into ice.

결국 동생과 같이 가기로 결정했습니다.
In the end I decided to go with my younger sister.

The particle -(으)로 can attach to nouns denoting humans to express status, capacity, position or qualifications.

**Examples:**

저는 선교사로 한국에 있습니다.

I've come to Korea as a missionary.

그 분은 의사로 병원에서 일하세요.
She works as a doctor at a hospital.

그 분은 운전사로 취직했습니다.
He got a job as a driver.

그 전투가 결정된 대로 답사를 했습니다.
He made a reply as a graduate representative.

그 여자는 신훈감으로 좋습니다.
She's good bride material.

-(으)로서 as, in the capacity of, to

Like the last usage of particle -(으)로 above, -(으)로서 functions to express status, capacity, position or qualifications. The last usage of particle -(으)로, above can be treated as an optional shortening of -(으)로서.

**Examples:**

그는 사회사업가로서 이름이 났어요.
He is well known as a social worker.

전투 선수로서 유명한 사람은 누구세요?
Which one is the person famous as a boxer?

그 사람은 결혼 상태로서 맞지 않아요.
She is not appropriate as a marriage partner.

그는 교우를 아들로서 삼합이요.
He adopted an orphan as his son.

선생으로서의 책임을 다 해야지요.
Of course, I have to assume all my responsibilities as a teacher.

-(으)로서 with, by means of, using; because of, due to; in accord

The particle -(으)로서 combines with nouns or nominalized forms of action verbs to express an instrument or means. The nominalized form is usually -(으)로.

**Examples:**
This country will become wealthy by means of righteous politics.

One can lay a good foundation through conscientious work.

We can overcome difficulties by combining our forces.

One can accumulate learning through the reading of books.

I intend to broaden my experience through travel.

The vocative particles are used in order to call a person or an object. Nouns ending in a vowel take -아, -여, and nouns ending in a consonant take -아, -이여.

Examples:
- 영철아, 너 어디 가니?
  Hey Yongchol, where are you going?
- 수희야, 빨리 와.
  Suhi Hurry over here.
- 대풍이여, 긴장하소라.
  O typhoon! Please subside.
- 젊은이들여, 야심을 가쳐라.
  My dear young people, be ambitious!
- 동포여, 분발하지.
  Fellow brethren, let us work hard together!

2. Connective Particles (접속조사)

-아/과, -하고, -(이)랑 [together] with; and

1) The conjunctive particles serve to link or conjoin two words in a sentence as coordinates. Nouns ending in a vowel, take -아 or -랑 and nouns ending in a consonant take -과 or -이랑. Both of these particles are interchangeable with -하고.

Examples:
- 천마한 외자와 책상이 많아요.
  There are lots of chairs and desks in this room.
- 광장에서 생필품과 체소를 산다.
  I buy fish and vegetables at the market.
- 토요일과 일요일에는 안가해요.
  I relatively free on Saturday and Sunday.
- 선생님하고 학생이 이야기하고 있어요.
  The teacher and the student are talking.
- 천수랑 순희는 학교에 갔습니다.
  Cholsu and Sunhi went to school.

2) When coordinative particles are used in conjunction with predicates which require two nouns, they express the idea that the two nouns either have something in common or are comparable. In other words, certain predicates call for use of a coordinative particle.

Examples:
- 천수는 영수와 싸웠어요.
  Cholsu had a fight with Yongsu.
- 천수가 순희와 결혼할 것임니다.
  Cholsu is going to marry ['with'] Sunhi.
- 이 물건은 내 것과 비슷합니다.
  This piece of merchandise is similar to ['with'] mine.
- 김 선생은 이 선생하고 친합니다.
  Mr. Kim is close with Mr. Lee.
Yesterday I went sight-seeing with a friend. I was thinking a similar thought, too. His heart is beautiful like a child's. 

I spent some time alone with nature. I joined up with some of my classmates and went to visit my alma mater. I really wanted to keep my appointment with him. or I really wanted to keep my promise to him.

-에(다가) and, and all that, and whatnot, and the like, and stuff

This particle is composed of -에 plus the transerferentive -다가. It functions to link two nouns of similar nature, and is used to add to or elaborate on the preceding noun in a kind of selective enumeration. The 가 of -다가 can be omitted, leaving just -에다; indeed, the entire -다가 can be omitted, leaving just -에.

Examples:

I ate a real lot — rice, and ricecakes, and stuff.

We had a lot of guests — relatives, friends and the like.

It was so hard — cleaning, laundry, the works.

Two added to one makes three.

That booze is pretty strong, so add some ice to it.

I wrote down the phone number in my memo-book.
Examples:
언제까지 갈더시겠어요?
How long [until when] will you wait?
동래문까지 같이 갑니다.
Let's go as far as Tongdaemun together.
오늘은 150쪽까지 읽겠습니다.
Today I'll read as far as page 150.
어젯밤 늦게까지 책을 보았어요.
I was reading until late last night.
성공할 때까지 돌아오지 않겠어요.
I won't come back until I succeed.

The auxiliary particle -까지 can also be used to express the idea that a situation or occurrence is unexpected.

Examples:
너까지 나를 믿지 못하면 어떻게 하지?
What am I to do if even you don't believe me?
대학까지 졸업하고 그렇지 않아요?
You've even graduated from university and you don't know that?
졸업할 때는 최고상까지 봤다.
When she graduated, she even got the top prize.
사우설어서까지 잡을 지만 물들어요.
You're in big trouble if you fall asleep even at the office.
고향에 있는 가족에게까지 소문이 난습니다.
Even my folks back home caught wind of it.
-게나 fairly well/much, to a fair extent (or so)

The auxiliary particle -게나 is made up of the suffix -게 meaning to a certain extent and the approximative suffix -나 meaning approximately [such-and-such an amount or number]. The particle is used to imply that a fact is more or less true to a certain degree, or that there is good reason for one assertion.

Examples:
그 아이는 고집끼나 세요.
That kid sure is stubborn.
일곱이 성출끼나 부러지 생각해야.
He looks like a pretty ornery character!
그 사람은 백세나 하는 사람이야!
He sure does talk a good talk!
함께나 한다고 자랑하고 있어.
He's bragging that he's pulling lots of strings.
돈세나 있다고 해 기만하고 그래.
He sure is conceited about having a little money.

-는/은

The auxiliary particle -는/은 is used to mark contrast or the sentence topic. Nouns ending in a consonant take -은 and nouns ending in a vowel take -는.

When used on a noun which functions as a subject or object, the auxiliary particle -는/은 replaces -이/가 and -을/を.

Examples:
저 분은 김 선생이예요.
That's Mr. Kim.
이 연필은 참 좋아요.
This pencil is really nice.
나는 아침에 일찍 일어나요.
I get up early in the morning.
아기가 밤은 잘 먹네요.
The baby eats well.
그 가게에서 사과는 파는데 포도는 없어요.
They sell apples in that store, but not grapes.

The auxiliary particle -는/은 can be used in combination with other particles, adverbs, connective endings and verb endings, in which case -는 can abbreviate to -ㄴ.

Examples:
In the mornings I'm busy.
This bus doesn't go to Chongno.
I'm not in a good mood.
I understand this sentence a little.
I'm not in a good mood.

If I have money I'll buy it.

- (이)나 or the like, or something, or so; around, approximately; as much/many as, to the (surprising) extent to; or, and, and/or; whoever, all, , every

The auxiliary particle - (이)나 has the basic meaning of choice, but has a number of different usages. Nouns ending in a consonant take - (이)나, and nouns ending in a vowel take - (나).

Used to link two nouns, the auxiliary particle means or.

Examples :

caffeinated or herbal tea, please give me tea or coffee.
I want to go to America or France.
Let's meet at a tea house or in a restaurant.
We do our touring by train or bus.

Of chicken or pork, he bound to be unable to eat at least one of them.

When the auxiliary particle - (이)나 follows a noun but is itself followed by a verb, it has the meaning of or the like, or something, implying that the choice one has made is of no particular interest. In this usage, - (이)나 can follow other particles.

Examples :

Approximately how many guests are coming?
[About] How old is that child now?
About how many days will that take?

In a related usage with numerical expressions, the particle - (이)나 implies that the amount is more than expected or more than one would normally anticipate.

Examples :

Yesterday I slept for [as many as] 10 hours.
I waited for my friend for [as many as] 30 minutes.
He eats [as much as] five portions of meat.
You drink [as many as] seven cups of coffee a day?
Last time I walked [as far as] four kilometers.

When used in combination with an interrogative pronoun, the particle -(으)나 creates a generalized expression: *wh... ever, all, every, wh... it may be.*

**Examples:**
누구나 노력하면 성공할 수 있어요.
If you work hard, anybody can succeed.
그는 무엇이나 할 줄 알아요.
He can do just about anything.
저는 음식은 아무거나 잘 먹어요.
I eat just about anything.
그녀는 언제나 웃음을 딴어요.
She is always smiling.
몸이 어떻게나무가 오지 일이나지 못했어요.
My body felt so heavy that I couldn't get up.

(이)나마 although it is this; at least; anyway; even this (much)

The auxiliary particle -(으)나마 implies that the noun in question is not of particular interest or to one's liking, but that one nonetheless grudgingly or reluctantly accepts it.

**Examples:**
작은 침이나마, 도움이 되었으면 합니다.
My strength doesn't amount to much, but I hope it is of some assistance.
그 분 생일에는 작은 생일나마 보여 드리고 싶어요.
On her birthday I like to do something nice for her, however insignificant.

I don't have any money, so I should help you at least physically.
The auxiliary particle 노 is used to show that one thing is the same as, or is included or subsumed by another. It can attach to nouns, particle, adverbs and verb endings.

**Cases of 노 used with nouns:**

**Examples:**
저도 학생이에요.
I'm a student, too.
그는 경구도 잘 치어요.
He's also good at tennis.
그녀는 공부도 잘 하고 일도 잘 합니다.
She both studies well and works well.
그 아이는 아직도 어머니도 아 달게 집니다.
Both her mother and father are dead.
그 사람은 학생도 아니고 선생도 아니에요.
He is neither a student nor a teacher.

**When attached to particles (other than -(으)나, -(으)는, -(으)로), adverbs and verb endings, the auxiliary particle -도 adds the meaning of emphasis.**

**Examples:**
일요일에도 회사에 나갑니다.
I go to work even on Sundays.
한국에도 친구가 많아요.
I have lots of friends in Korea, too. [or: ...even in Korea]
That train sure is going fast.

He was so sick he couldn’t even go to work.

She is neither pretty nor ugly.

- (으)로 or, or the like, or something; however it be

The auxiliary particle -(으)로 is used when, instead of picking out something pre-selected, one concedes the right of selection to the listener. There are also cases when this particle can follow an interrogative word to make an indefinite (any at all; wh… ever). A pair of nouns or phrases marked with -(으)로 presents a choice about which one is indifferent (whether it be … or … don’t care). Note that -(으)로 can be abbreviated to -(으)로.

Examples:

매운 사과와 마을대로 사그욱요.
Buy whatever you want — pears, apples. I don’t care.

방어보는 방어보는 중 베어야 함을 내지.
If you want some energy you have to eat something — rice or bread or whatever.

누구든지 왜서 이것 좀 도와 주십시오.
Would someone — anyone — please come here and give me a hand?

언제든지 자기 장소를 떠나서 때가 있을 거야.
There will always be times when one regrets one’s mistakes.

이거든 저거든 하여든 길만을 데려다서 시작하세요.
I don’t care if it’s this one or that one, but anyway let’s decide and get on with it.

The auxiliary particle can also attach to particles like -에, -에, -(으)로, etc.

Examples:

어떻든든 끝에든 끝들어 빠날시다.
I don’t care if it’s in summer or winter let’s go on a trip.

The law is something which applies equally to anyone and everyone.

A medicine which works on any and all diseases is called a panacea.

So embarrassed I wanted to disappear into a hole anyone hole at all.

-(으)로 granted that it be is …, even though it be/is…

The auxiliary particle -(으)로 combines concessive and rhetorical meanings to render a pattern along the lines of even though… how/wh…?, etc. Nouns ending in a consonant take -(으)로, and nouns ending in a vowel take -(으)로.

Examples:

내가 이렇게 마음이 아픈데 면돌 때 알 그렇게겠니?
If I’m so upset like this, how could you not be?

내가 과거면 이건들 못 가겠니?
If you just say the word, I will follow you to the ends of the earth [lit. how could I not go wherever?]

마음만 막으면 맘인을 못하라.
If you just put your mind to it, there is nothing you cannot do. [lit. whatever could there be that you could not do? Answer: Nothing.]

목식이 아닌 바해야 경인을 없겠어.
Only rocks and wood have no emotions. [lit. as long as it’s not woods or rock we’re talking about, would he/she/they not have feelings? Answer: Of course!]

우리도 문화내 당사자들 오키겠습니까?
If even we are so angry, how do you suppose they [the affected ones] feel?

-(으)로 even if (it he); just, (or the) like, or even, any, some

The auxiliary particle -(으)로 is used to express the speaker’s indifference to the noun in question. Sometimes it is used with interroga-
tive words to express an indefinite: any ... at all.

**Examples:**
- 감기라도 들면 어떻게 해요?
- What if you catch a cold or something?
- 아무거나 좋으니, 잡은 책 좀 주세요.
- Anything at all will do, so please give a book to read.
- 어디라도 갤으니까 가자.
- Any place at all is fine; let's just go.
- 네가 오지 못하면 동생이라도 보내.
- If you can't come, send your brother or something.
- 내일이라도 만나서 의논해 볼시다.
- Let's meet tomorrow or so and discuss it.

The auxiliary particle -(이)라도 can also appear after particle like -에, -에서, -(으)로, -부터, -(까지), etc.

**Examples:**
- 저녁이라도 시간 좀 내 주세요.
  - Can you give me a little time, say, in the evening?
- 어디라도 갤라고 하면 일허리 잘 걸니다.
  - I'll go to work wherever I'm wanted (I don't care where).
- 첫가락으로 먹기가 어려우니까 손으로라도 맛있어요.
  - This is hard to eat with chopsticks so I think I'll just eat it with my hands.
- 이제라도 열심히 하면 성공할 수 있습니다.
  - If you work hard, it's still not too late to succeed. [lit. : if should it be from now on...]
- 이번 주말까지라도 면역을 끊어 주셨으면 합니다.
  - I really wish you could finish the translation by, say, this weekend.

The auxiliary particle -(이)라도 can also be used after the verb ending -(이, 이)서 meaning reason, sequence or method/means. (See page 308).

**Examples:**

여면 방법을 써서라도 목표는 달성해야겠습니다.
I have to achieve my goal, whatever [method] it takes.

물은 내셔라도 여행 중 같나 오렴.
Even if you have to make time for it specially, do please go away on a trip for a while.

은행 융자를 받아셔라도 공사를 죽혀야죠.
We have to finish the construction, even if it means taking out a loan from the bank.

모르는 건 배워셔라도 알아야지.
You have to know what it is you don't know, even if it means more learning.

배워셔라도 나쁜 바릇을 고치야 해요.
We have to cure you of your bad habits, even if it means beating them out of you.

-(이)라든지 (the question) whether it be said to be

The auxiliary particle -(이)라든지 shares most of its meaning and function with the auxiliary particle -(이)든지 seen above -indifference to a series of two or more choices. This auxiliary particle is interchangeable with -(이)라든가.

**Examples:**
- 의사가 운동을 하라지만, 공이라든지 축구기라든지 잡 운동기구가 있어야 하지요.
  - My doctor says I should exercise, but I need a ball or a jumprope or some sort of exercise paraphernalia (and I don't really care what kind).
- 그 일은 김군이라든지 이군이라든지 누구든 시키면 잘 할 거야.
  - If you get Kim or Lee or whoever to do it they'll do a good job.
- 심심하면 친구라면지 골프라든지 좀 배워 보면 어떻까요?
  - If you're bored, how about learning to play tennis or golf of the like?
- 경찰관 캔달라든지 덜래기라든지 같은 민속놀이를 하죠.
  - In January we do traditional Korean games like kite-flying or teeter-totter.

그럼 그는 재무성가 노래 부르는 재주는 태고 나는 거예요.
Things like painting or singing are talents one is born with.

- (이) 라서 it is ... and so; indeed, possibly, audaciously, by any audacity

The auxiliary particle -(이) 라서 attaches to nouns and means because it is ... When -(이) 라서 is used in combination with the interrogative pronoun 누구, the resulting shape is 라서 and means who would dare??

Examples:

어른이라서 말보드리기가 어려워요.

Because he is my elder and superior, it is difficult for me to say this.

우리는 오래 전부터 친구라서 서로 잘 알고 있습니다.

What I'm saying is that, since we're friend since way back, we know each other well.

무능한 사람이라서 일을 잘 해 낼지 걱정이에요.

Because he is so incompetent I worried as to whether he can do the job.

나무 늙은 맘이라서 전화를 걸기가 좀 어렵습니다.

It's so late at night that it's a bit awkward to call.

라서 그 이 뿔을 쳤으라.

Who would dare to discourage him?

When used in conjunction with the confirmation-seeking 그렇지, the auxiliary particle -(이) 라서 gives a pattern translatable as perhaps it is because... [implied: but I'm not sure and need confirmation].

Examples:

봄이라서 그런지 운동이 나온는데는 것 같아요.

It's probably because it is spring, but my whole body seems to be getting all weary.

위체라서 그런지 않이 엉덩이가疼요.

Maybe it's because it's foreign-made, but the price is exorbitant!

시험 기간이라서 그런지 도서실이 밤이에요.

I guess it's because it's exam period, but it's a full house in the reading room.
Mind your own stuff and leave other people's things alone.

Don't worry about [us] here and concentrate on what you're doing.

Come straight home and don't get distracted along the way.

I don't mind if you go to karaoke rooms, but don't go to arcades.

Every year the farming goes well.

All the houses are flying the Korean flag.

Even that friend has now left my side.

Do you go to church every week?
The auxiliary particle 〜만 can also attach to other particles, adverbs and verb endings.

**Examples:**
아침에만 공부하고, 오후에는 사무실에 가요.
I only study in the mornings, and in the afternoons I go to the office.
저는 쪽 서울에서만 살았어요.
I've only ever lived in Seoul my whole life.
그 현지들 지참았던 보니 주세요.
Show the letter to me and me only.
별리만 읽지 마세요.
Just don't read it [too] fast.
철수는 밤을 들고만 있어요.
Cholsu is just listening.

〜밖에 outside of (a limit), (with the) exception (of)

The auxiliary particle 밖에 denotes a limit or boundary for the preceding content or situation, and is normally followed by a negative form. Use with the particle 〜는 reinforces the meaning of emphasis. The basic meaning is besides, or outside of.

**Examples:**
전 한국말을 조금밖에 못해요.
I only speak a little Korean [lit.: Outside of a little I can't speak Korean.]
술을 한 잔밖에 마시지 않았는데요.

The auxiliary particle 〜바에 can also be used after 〜는/(으)녀/의/의 것.

**Examples:**
그 아이는 놀만 뜨면 먹는 것밖에 몰라요.
No sooner than that child wakes up, all he knows how to do is eat.
돈은 오늘 쓸 것밖에 없는데요.
The only money I have is what I need [to use] today.
그는 먹고 자는 것밖에 하는 일이 아아요.
The only thing he ever does is eat and sleep.
선생님이 말씀하신 것밖에 기억나지 않아요.
The only things I remember are what the teacher said.
물 줄은 모르고 받는 것밖에 모르는가봐요.
It seems all she knows is how to receive, and not how to give.

〜보니 (asks/tells/shows) to (a person)

The auxiliary particle 〜보니 has the same meaning as and can replace 〜에게 in colloquial speech. It is usually followed by a verb like 말하다 say, tell, 묻다 ask, 웃다 smile, 욕하다 curse, etc.

**Examples:**
나보니 뭐라고 그래요?
What did you say to me? or Did you say something to me?
그 말이 바로 너보니 하는 소리야.
What he said was aimed precisely at you.
누구보니 바보라고 해?
Who are you calling a fool?
It’s bad to use ‘low form’ to one’s elders.

Who’s that person over there smiling at you?

The auxiliary particle is used to compare two or more things.

* Examples:
  - Cholsu is bigger than Yongsu.
  - Airplanes are faster than trains.
  - Today seems hotter than yesterday.

-부터 from (a time), since; beginning with, starting from

The auxiliary particle -부터 designates a temporal or spatial point of departure or inception.

* Examples of -부터 used with nouns.
  - We began class from 9 AM.
  - Starting tomorrow please come to school early.
  - This flower blooms starting in February.
  - Today we are going to study starting with Lesson Five.

You have to learn starting from the basics.

* Examples of -부터 used with other particles, adverbs and verb endings.

* Examples:
  - I walked from school.
  - I have to rush around from early in the morning.
  - He has been talented ever since he was little.

The auxiliary particle -부터 can also attach to nouns with the meaning of starting from / with; does it first.

* Examples:
  - What shall we start with?
  - In some restaurants you have to pay before you eat.

These two auxiliary particles denote spatial or temporal starting.
points and end-points, respectively.

I Used with nouns:

**Examples:**

저는 오전 여덟 시부터 오후 다섯 시까지 근무해요.
I work from 8 AM until 5 PM.

제일과부터 제오까지 시험 보겠어요.
We're going to have an exam on lessons 1 to 5.

일원부터 삼일까지 제일 바쁘요.
We're busiest from January to March.

아침부터 저녁까지 놀기만 해요.
All he does is fool around from morning until evening.

지금부터 내일 아침까지 꼬으세요.
Don't eat anything from now until tomorrow morning.

These auxiliary particles can also be used after other particles or verb endings; in case when the particle 에서 is used, the 에 can be dropped leaving just 에서.

**Examples:**

여기서부터 집까지 걸어 갑니다.
Let's walk from here to home.

지금으로부터 십 년 전까지의 역사를 알아 보세요.
Please find out about the history from now until ten years back.

집에 도착해서부터 지금까지 줄곧 쉬었습니다.
Ever since arriving home I've rested right up until now.

그 약을 먹고부터 이제까지 아주 건강했습니다.
Ever since taking that medicine I've been very healthy thus far.

그 사람을 만나고서부터 지금까지 행복하게 살아요.
I've been living happily ever since meeting her ['until now'].

- 놀 only, merely, just, alone; nothing but, only, constantly

The auxiliary particle 에서 is used to express the idea of selection of one thing only, and exclusion of all others. It is usually followed by the copula 에요.
Examples:
오늘이야말로 내게는 잊을 수 없는 날입니다.
Today is indeed an unforgettable day for me.
불국사의 석굴암이야말로 한국 예술품의 대표입니다.
Sokkuram at Pulguk Temple is truly epitome of Korean works of art.
 결혼이야말로 일생에서 가장 중요한 일입니다.
Marriage is without question the most important event of our lives.
그 사람이야말로 우리 회사에 있어서는 안 될 사람이다.
She is truly an indispensable person for our company.
그 소문이야말로 믿을 수 없는 헛소문이다.
That is without question an unbelievable and groundless rumor.

The auxiliary particle -(이)야 can attach to the copular form -이 라 to express an emphatic only if it be, unless it be.

Examples:
한국사람이야 한국말을 가르칠 수 있을까요?
Do you have to be a Korean to be able to teach Korean?
책임감이 강한 사람이야 그 일을 할 거야.
You have to be a person with a strong sense of responsibility to do that job.
무자바야 그런 점을 살 수 있을 거야.
You probably have to be rich to buy a house like that.
한번 고기야 로고가 참 istediğ 수 있습니다.
The meat has to be tender if elderly people are to be able to eat it.
맛고 좋은 물건이야 잘 판립니다.
It has to go good quality, cheap merchandise to sell well.

The auxiliary particle can be used in conjunction with the pattern in -고다 in two different ways. The combination -고야 means only after ...ing or only under the circumstance that/under the unique circumstance that ...

Examples:
전 그분의 말씀을 들어야 대답하겠습니다.
I'm going to wait until after I hear what he has to say before I answer.
그분의 말씀을 들으시야 안심할 수 있습니다.
Only after I heard the sound of his voice did I feel relieved.
무엇을 시작하려고 내고야 빌는 설립니다.
Her character is of the type that absolutely insists on finishing something once she starts it.
그분한테서 병을 받아내고야 받겠습니다.
I will get my money out of him.
그렇게 미리가 내고야 무슨 일을 하겠습니까?
How can he hold down a job if he's so dumb?

The auxiliary particle -(이)야 also lends its sense of contingency to the pattern in -이 가 아니라고야 unless (lit.: if and only if the preceding not be the case, the action in the following clause is impossible). In other words, it is an emphatic way to express -이 가 때문에 because (such-and-such), the contents of the following clause will come about. This pattern can also be used as - 이 가 아님시야.

Examples:
전 세계이 아닙니다 어째 그럴 타 의을 수 있을까요?
How can you memorize all that unless you're a genius?
바보가 아니고야 왜 그 말도 모르니?
How would you not know even that word unless you're an idiot?
귀신이 아닌아고야 어떻게 알았을 그렇게 잘 알겠어요?
How could she know past events so well unless she's a ghost?
사랑하는 사람이 아닙니다 자기 목숨까지 버릴 리가 있겠습니까?
What reason would there be for him to sacrifice his own life unless she was somebody he loved?
도둑놈이 아니고시야 남의 물건을 가져 가겠습니까?
Who else would make off with somebody else's possessions other than a thief?
The auxiliary particle -조차 is used to express the idea that, in comparison with other similar facts, a certain fact is unexpected or out of the ordinary. It can be paraphrased in Korean with "아무리" moreover, "what more, to boot. It is not normally used in imperative or propositive sentences.

Examples:
그 사람은 눈물조차 흘리지 않았습니다.
He didn't even shed a tear.
그것은 더 이어가할 가치조차 없습니다.
That isn't even worth talking about any further.
생명님이 오실 줄은 생각조차 못했어요.
The thought never even occurred to me that you might come.
나무 바빠서 밥 먹을 시간조차 잊지 않았습니다.
I've been so busy I haven't even had time to eat.
가족들조차도 그분의 행복을 알 수 없었어요.
Even his own family members had no idea of his whereabouts.

-조차 to speak of, speaking of, as for; since/as it is...

The auxiliary particle -(으)로 쓰 attaches to nouns and means when it comes to..., speaking of... Nouns ending in a consonant take -(으)로 쓰, and nouns ending in a vowel take -으로 쓰. This pattern can also take the shape -(이)로 쓰는.

Examples:
그 사람이 해건조차 그 말이 사실이라고요.
According to that person, what he says is true.
아! 이 클론조차 명필이리다.
Wow! This handwriting is artistry!
이런 시험인조차 누워서 빡 역기조.
Exams like this are a piece of cake.
의사 발인조차 병영을 환자에게 알리는 게 도움이 됩니다.
According to the doctor, it helps patients to inform them of their
Have you ever seen a person who dislikes money?

Of all the many jobs women can do, this one is too difficult.

The auxiliary particle -치고 can be emphasized by adding -는, in which case the meaning is compared to the entire set of nouns of this type ... (exceptionally).

Examples:

- 고차차고는 거의 같다.
  Considering it's a used car, it looks like new.

- 외리의 예쁜 사람치고는 마음이 고운데.
  For a person with such a pretty face she's also very nice at heart.

- 아저지는 너무 어른스럽군.
  She's so adult-like for a child!

- 음식 습식치고는 그룹을 따를 사람이 없는 것 같다.
  When it comes to culinary skills, it seems nobody can match her.

- 아픔치고는 참 멋있는 이름입니다.
  As names go, it's quite a classy one.

- 가령 far from (being), to say nothing of, let alone, on the contrary; not only; contrary to expectation; instead of (something desirable that one might expect)

The auxiliary particle -가령 is used to explain that a condition even less favorable than that in the preceding clause pertains in the following clause. Thus, it has a meaning similar to the 고사하고 of the pattern in -은/는 고사하고 -조차 아니라하다, i.e. it presents a negative or unpleasant set of circumstances, then goes on to present something even worse. This particle attaches to nouns as -은/는 가령 and to verbs as -기는 가령, and the noun or ending following -가령 usually takes -도. (See page 167)

Examples:

- 편지는 가령 전화 한통도 못 받았조.

I haven't even had a phone call from her, let alone a letter.

My throat hurts so much I haven't even been able to drink, let alone eat.

Hey, I don't even have your garden variety friend, let alone a girlfriend.

He doesn't even review, let alone preparing before he comes.

I left for work without even having lain down, let alone slept.

In place of the particle -도, the noun or noun phrase in the second clause of the -가령 pattern can take the auxiliary particle -까지, in which case the negative meaning is even more emphatic.

Examples:

- 밥은 가령 중 그릇조차 못 먹었어요.
  I haven't even had one lousy bowl of gruel, let alone rice.

- 책은 가령 검지조차 잡지 않으니, 뭐 할겠어요?
  You don't even read magazines, let alone books, so what would you know?

- 일은 가령 심부름조차 해 주는 사람이 없으니, 담당하군요.
  I don't even have anybody to run errands for me, let alone work for me, so it's driving me crazy.

- 피서는 가령 수영 한 번조차 못 하고 여름을 지내셨습니다.
  I passed through the whole summer without even going swimming once, let alone getting away somewhere cool for a holiday.

- 금메달은 가령 동메달조차도 못 받았어요.
  She didn't even get the bronze medal, let alone the gold.
Chapter Ten

Tense

Tense in Korean can be divided into past, present and future depending upon the time of the speaker's utterance and the time of occurrence of the event, action or state in question. But because many Korean tense markers also express aspect, one must be careful not to interpret them strictly as time markers.

Korean employs the following methods to indicate tense: 1) Tense marking via final verb endings (see Figure 12). 2) Tense marking via adnominal endings. We also treat this subject under "Special Expressions using Verbal Inflectional Endings" in Chapter 13 ("Adnominal Endings, page 316). 3) Tense can also be indicated or made clearer by the use of certain time adverbs in a sentence.

1. Tense Marking via Final Verb Endings

1) Present Tense (현제형)

(Figure 12)

Inflected Forms for Final Endings, Present Tense

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Final Ending</th>
<th>-(으)는다</th>
<th>-(으)십니다</th>
<th>-(으)어요</th>
<th>-(으)십시오</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dict. Form</td>
<td>가다</td>
<td>갔다</td>
<td>갔다</td>
<td>가지고 갔다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>가지고 갔다</td>
<td>가지고 갔다</td>
<td>가지고 갔다</td>
<td>가지고 갔다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- 189 -
### Tense

191 Chapter Ten

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>보다</th>
<th>본다</th>
<th>빼다</th>
<th>가다</th>
<th>오다</th>
<th>입다</th>
<th>잡다</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹는다</td>
<td>먹습니다</td>
<td>먹어요</td>
<td>먹지 않아요</td>
<td>먹시나요</td>
<td>먹으세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>배우다</td>
<td>배운다</td>
<td>배웁니다</td>
<td>배워요</td>
<td>배워야 하지 않아요</td>
<td>배워세요</td>
<td>배워지세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>쓰다</td>
<td>쓰는다</td>
<td>쓰습니다</td>
<td>쓰어요</td>
<td>쓰지 않아요</td>
<td>쓰시나요</td>
<td>쓰워요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>치다</td>
<td>치는다</td>
<td>치웁니다</td>
<td>치어요</td>
<td>치지 않아요</td>
<td>치시나요</td>
<td>치워요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하다</td>
<td>합니다</td>
<td>합니다</td>
<td>하세요</td>
<td>하지 않아요</td>
<td>하시나요</td>
<td>하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좋다</td>
<td>좋아합니다</td>
<td>좋아하시는</td>
<td>좋아요</td>
<td>좋아해야 하지 않아요</td>
<td>좋아하세요</td>
<td>좋아해야 하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>비었다</td>
<td>비었습니다</td>
<td>비었습니다</td>
<td>비어요</td>
<td>비어지지 않아요</td>
<td>비어시나요</td>
<td>비어해야 하세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>에쁘다</td>
<td>에쁘습니다</td>
<td>에쁘시요</td>
<td>에뻐요</td>
<td>에쁘지 않아요*</td>
<td>에뻐세요</td>
<td>에뻐해야 하세요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* In actual fact, -이/가 아니라 is used more frequently than -이지 않아요.

Even if an event occurs after the time of utterance, the present tense is used if the event is expected or anticipated.

**Examples:**

| 저구는 온다. | The earth revolves. |
| 인간은 만들의 영장이다. | Mankind is the lord of all creation. |
| 꽃이 오면 꽃이 된다. | When spring comes the flowers bloom. |
| 사랑은 누구나 한번은 죽는다. | Everyone dies at some point. |
| 나이가 차면 결혼을 해야 합니다. | When one reaches the appropriate age, one must get married. |
| 그 아이는 병 모자를 쓴다. | That child always wears a hat. |

Even if an event occurs after the time of utterance, the present tense is used if the event is expected or anticipated.

**Examples:**

| 난 내일 아침 비행기로 미나다. | I'm leaving tomorrow morning by airplane. |
| 시험 결과는 내일 알리 드려요. | I let you know the results of the test tomorrow. |
| 아들이 내년에 대학을 졸업하겠어요. | My son is graduating from college next year. |
| 30분이면 학교 수업이 끝났어요. | School classes finish in 30 minutes. |
| 비행기가 곧 출발합니다. 멀리 타세요. | The plane is leaving any minute now. Hurry up and board. |

2) **Past Tense (과거형)**

Past tense is expressed by attaching the past tense ending -있(있) to an action or descriptive verb base (see page 98).
The past tense ending -겠/겠 is used to show that an event or state occurred in the past.

**Examples:**

- It rained yesterday.
- Mother went out.
- That child was really pretty when she was little.
- She was my Korean language teacher.

The past tense ending can also express the fact that an event or action was completed, and its effect(s) continue(s) up to the present.

**Examples:**

- He went to Pusan yesterday [and he is still there].
- Now I’ve finished all my homework.
- I’ve met Mr. Kim.
- I painted a picture and then ripped it up.
- I’ve quit smoking now.

When one wishes to express an event, action or state which occurred much earlier than the time of utterance, one can use the ‘past–past’ ending.

**Examples:**

- Mr. Kim came here yesterday.
- She sometimes used to wear red clothes.
- He went to the States to study [and now he’s back].

Time adverbs or adverbial expressions associated with past tense like 작년 last year, 어렸을 때 when one was little, 학생이었을 때 when
one was a student, when one was young, etc., can be used to make the past tense clearer.

**Examples:**

나는 작년에 부산에 갔었어요.
I went to Pusan last year.

질렀을 때는 기억력이 좋았었다.
When I was young my memory was good.

나도 얼마 전에 여기서 먹었었습니다.
I ate here once not long ago, too.

오래전 그분도 여기 선생님이었었습니다.
A long time ago, she was a teacher here, too.
그분은 예전에 미국에 유학았었어요.
Way back when she studied in the States.

When one recalls a past event and returns to the time of the event to narrate it more vividly, one uses the retrospective ending -더 followed by the final endings -다, -고, etc.

**Examples:**

김 선생은 이제 교향 집에 가더라.
Mr. Kim was on his way to his hometown yesterday [I recall].

이제는 날씨가 제 충분한요.
Yesterday the weather was quite cold [I recall].

그 사람을 만나 보니 제 친구가군요.
When I met him I realized he was a friend [I recall].

세마을호는 아주 바르더라.
The Saemaul train was really fast [as I recall].

김치가 맛이 있다군요.
Their kimchi' was tasty [I recall].

3) **Future Tense**

In Korean the future tense is expressed with -(으)ㄹ 거예요, -(으)ㄹ 거예요, -(으)ㄹ 거예요, -(으)ㄹ 거예요. The ending in -(으)ㄹ 거예요 is used to express the speaker's strong will or intention, while the pattern in -(으)ㄹ 거예요 is a simpler future, and expresses less will or intention than -(으)ㄹ 거예요. See the figure below for more details.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Tense</th>
<th>(Figure 14)</th>
<th>Future Tense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future Dict. Form</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
<td>-(으)ㄹ 거예요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Examples:**

오늘 친구들이 집에 놀러 오겠어요.
I see your friends are coming over today [‘to play’]!

네일은 집에 있을 거예요.
Tomorrow I’ll be at home.

이 음식을 맛있게 맛겠습니다.
I'm going to enjoy eating this food.

그 책들은 이제 읽지 않겠어요.
Now I don't want to read those books anymore.

오늘 영화 구경을 잘 거예요.
We're going to go see a movie today.

In first-person statements, the ending -(으)ㄹ 거예요 expresses intention or will.

**Examples:**

나는 그 사람을 만나지 않겠어요.
I do not intend to meet him again.

나는 지금 숙제를 하겠어요.
I'm going to do my homework now.

다방에 가서 커피를 마시겠습니까.

I'm going to go to a tea house and have coffee.
나는 예쁜 커피 집에 가서 커피를 마시러 갈 거야.

Tomorrow I will definitely finish that job.
내일 밤에 그 일을 definitely 깜빡할 거야.

If something comes up I contact you at home.
일이 있으면 집으로 연락하겠어.

The ending -겠 can also express supposition.
들은 ending -겠 can also express supposition.

Examples:

I bet it's going to rain tomorrow!
그 사람도 부인을 만나겠지.

I'll bet he's going to meet his wife, too.
어린 아이도 그 일은 할 수 있겠어요.

I'll bet even a child could do that.
나도 그 문제를 풀겠어요.

I'll bet I can solve that problem, too.
김 선생은 지금 몰래 주도에 도착했겠어요.

I'll bet Mr. Kim has arrived in Cheju by now.

4) Progressive Tense (진행형)

The progressive tense uses the pattern in -고 있다. It is used only with action verbs, and tends to be used in conjunction with nouns indicating tense. In order to honorific the subject, the pattern is changed to -고 계시다. This pattern can also be used for repeated or habitual actions.

Examples:

My friend is waiting now.
아마 날마다 한국말을 공부하고 있습니다.

I'm studying Korean every day.
As mentioned earlier in the section on the “Characteristic Features of Korean”, the feature of honorification in Korean is more highly developed than in any other language. (see page 83). The morphology of Korean honorific expressions can be divided in three main types.

1. Subject Honorification (주제 높임법)

Subject honorification is achieved by attaching the honorific suffix ‘-(-으)시’ to the verb stem and thereby honorificating the subject of the sentence. It is important to note here that the relationship between the sentence subject, the speaker and the listener impinges directly on honorification. Likewise, in determining whether or not use of the honorific suffix is called for, factors like age, degree of intimacy of the relationship, social position and the specific personal relationship between the speaker and the target of honorification must all be taken into consideration. Note also that the subject of the sentence can be either the listener or a third person.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Vst + (으)시*</th>
<th>Vst (으)시 + -ㅂ니다</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>가다</td>
<td>가시</td>
<td>가십니다</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
*NB: verb stems ending in vowels take 읽습니다 and verb stems ending in consonants take 읽습니다.

Examples:

선생님께서 학교에 가십니다.
The teacher is going to school.

저 분이 김 박사님이십니다.
That's Dr. Kim.

어버지께서 신문을 보십시오.
Father is reading the newspaper.

한국말 책이 있을것인가?
Do you have any Korean language books?

그 분이 그렇게 예쁘니까?
Is she that pretty?

The usage of the honorific suffix ‘-(으)시’ is subject to a number of rather complex constraints; here we give just a few examples.

In cases where the listener is of higher status than the subject of the sentence, even if the subject is of higher status than the speaker, the honorific suffix ‘-(으)시’ is not used. In other words, in cases where the following situation pertains: listener → sentence subject → speaker where ‘=” means ‘is of higher status than’.

Examples:

할아버지, 아버지가 지급 왔습니다.
Grandfather, father has just come back.

어머니, 형이 돌아왔어요.
Mother, elder brother is back.

Dr. [So-and-so], my school senior is a professor.

선생님, 이 사람은 제 형이네요.
Teacher, this is my older brother.

교수님, 김 선배가 논문을 발표했습니다.
Professor - I hear that my school senior Kim gave a paper.

In genres like news reporting, or situations like textbooks where one is formally conveying knowledge, one does not use the honorific suffix ‘-(으)시’ even if the subject is of high status.

Examples:

대통령이 미국을 방문합니다.
The president visits the US.

김유신 장군은 삼국을 통일했습니다.
General Kim Yusin unified the three kingdoms.

卒업식에서 총장이 격려사를 했습니다.
The president of the university said some words of encouragement at the graduation ceremony.

군 책임자가 일선을 시찰했습니다요.
They say the military authorities made an inspection of the front line.

그 사교의 책임을 학교장이 쳤다.
The school principal took responsibility for that accident.

When referring to a body part or a personal possession of the target of honorification, one can add the honorific suffix ‘-(으)시’ to achieve an indirect honorific effect.

Examples:

선생님께서는 감기가 드셨습니다.
The teacher has caught a cold.

김 선생님께서는 얼굴이 예쁘십니다.
Mr. Kim is quite elderly.

이 선생님께서는 얼굴이 예쁘십니다.
Mrs. Lee has a pretty face.

박 사장님께서는 돈이 많으십니다.
Company president Pak has lots of money.
차가 없으시거 불편하시겠어요.
It must be inconvenient for you without a car.

In cases where the target of honorification is related to the listener, and that same target of honorification is higher in status than the listener, one can use the honorific suffix ‘-(으)시’ even if the speaker is higher in status than the subject of the sentence. In other words, in cases where the following situation pertains: speaker → sentence subject → listener where ‘-’ means ‘is of higher status than’.

**Examples:**
영수야, 너의 아버지 회사에 나타났나?
Hey Yongsu—has your father gone to work?
아가야, 어머님에게 벌리 요시라고 해라.
Hey little boy—tell your mother to come quickly.
내야, 아버지 정거 장수시라고 해.
Hey [you, my child]—tell your father dinner is ready.
부모님께 밤 9시에 마나시라고 알려.
Tell your parents to leave tomorrow at 9 o’clock.
심슨께 시간 맞춰 약을 드시라고 해라.
Tell your uncle to take his medicine at the right time intervals.

**2. Speech Levels (상대 높임법)**

Korean speakers must choose their final verb endings on the basis of factors like the listener’s social position, age, family relationships and the degree of intimacy of the speaker’s relationship with the listener. This process of selection appropriate final endings is called ‘Speech Levels’ (상대 높임법). Korean speech levels can be divided into two broad types: the Formal Speech Level (격식체) and the Informal Speech Level (비격식체). Each of these two broad categories has further subdivisions; thus, the Formal Speech level is composed of the Formal–High (존대형), Neutral...
The speaker for the listener and modesty and reserve on the part of the speaker vis a vis the listener. Thus, it is often used in solemn and serious conversation on formal occasions in order for the speaker to show respect and deference to the listener. This form can also be used, regardless of the relative social status or mutual relationship of speaker and listener, in situations where speaker and listener meet for the first time, or are not well acquainted.

Examples:

- Cholsu is going home.
- My younger sister is eating.
- Are there many books in the library?
- My, this flower is really pretty!
- Is that person over there the president of this university?
- Please speak slowly.

The Formal–Neutral form is used by speakers who are either relatively senior in age or high in social position to listeners who are lower in age and/or status, but without any great sense of ‘talking down’ to them; rather, the Formal–Neutral form shows a certain amount of respect to the listener, despite the latter lower status. As a consequence, the listener in such situations tends also to be somebody relatively senior and/or high in social position. Thus, the Formal–Neutral form is used mostly elderly people of the same generation.

Examples:

- Say — I’m leaving for the US tomorrow.
- 그 문이 세 차가 맞이 있어.
His new car was quite sharp.
내일 누가 오는가?
Who's coming tomorrow?
지금 바로 사무실로 오세요.
Please come straight to my office now.
그 아이가 학교를 갈 타니던가?
Was that child attending school all right?
높으시군, 할리 가세요.
It's late, so let's hurry up and go.
갑니다, 비가 오는 주변.
It was hot for a while, but now it's raining!

The Formal-Low form is typically used by an older or socially higher speaker to a younger listener, but can also be used mutually between speakers of the same age if they have a sufficiently intimate relationship. In the latter case of two speakers of similar age, when the speakers are of middle age or higher, they use the Formal-Neutral form introduced above. The Formal-Low form is also used in contexts where the message is not aimed at a specific individual; e.g. newspapers and magazines. In such cases, this speech level has no implication of ‘talking down’ to the reader.

Examples:
영희는 지금 잔다.
Yonghi is sleeping now.
영철이는 지금 목욕을 하느니라.
Yongchol is sure to be taking a bath now.
그 신발 찍 었으리다.
Those shoes are really pretty.
밥 먹었니?
Have you eaten?
학교에 늦으니라, 서둘러라.
You'll be late for school — hurry up!
이번 주말에 백화점에 구경가자.

Let’s go do some window-shopping at the department stores this weekend.
참 좋은 물건이 많구나!
They have lots of really good stuff!

When the speaker wishes to show particular deference or humility, the forms ‘--(으)르’, ‘-섭/시용/사오’ and ‘-참/자용/자오’ can also be used to exalt the listener. But whereas these forms were used often in the past, at present they have all but disappeared from the spoken language.

Examples:
그동안 안녕하셨사음니까?
Have you been keeping well?
안녕히 계시옵소서.
Goodbye.

2) Informal Speech Level (비격식체)

The Informal Speech level is less ceremonial, and feels softer and more subjective. Thus, it is used in cases of intimate relationship, or to listeners for whom the speaker feels a particularly close bond. The Informal-High form is made by adding ざ to the Informal-Low forms. In other words, the final ending ‘-아/어 (야, 여)’ is attached to the verb stem.

(1) Informal-High form (존대형)

Examples:
제주도는 참 아름답지요?
Cheju Island is really pretty, isn't it?
예, 그래요.
Yes, that's right.
지금 12시예요.
It's 12 o'clock now.
시간이 없으니, 빨리 가세요.
There's no time, so please go quickly.
같이 먹어요.
Let’s eat together.
시간이 참 바르군요!
My, how time flies!

(2) Informal—Low form (하대형)

Examples:
함은 지금 자.
My older brother is sleeping now.
이건 내 책이야.
This is my book.
오늘 저녁에 우리 먹어?
What are we having for supper tonight?
알아나, 여기 학교에 가.
Get up! Hurry up and go to school!
그럼, 내 차로 가자.
In that case, let’s go in my car.
말기가 참 맛이 있군!
Say, the strawberries are really tasty!

In everyday Korean conversation, it is normal to mix forms from the Formal Speech level with form in ‘-어(아, 여).’ from the Informal Speech level. But it is always best policy to use the Formal–High Speech style exclusively in official matters and on public or formal occasions which require attention to protocol and etiquette.

Examples:
줄 시두르세요. 곧 차가 올 것입니다.
Please hurry up. The car will be here any minute.
빨리 먹으시다. 메가 고파요.
Let’s eat soon. I’m hungry.
줄 십시다. 그리고 커피 한 잔씩 마셔요.
Let’s rest a bit. And then have a cup of coffee.
어서 드세요. 음식은 또 있습니다.
Help yourself. There’s plenty more food.
그만 발랄하십시오. 다 알아요.

That’s enough — I know all about it.

The ending in ‘-어(아, 여).’ observes the rules of vowel harmony (모음조화) when it attaches to verb stems. These rules are summarized in Figure 16 below.

(Figure 16) Vowel Harmony (모음조화)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preceding Vowel</th>
<th>Following Vowel</th>
<th>Contraction and Deletion</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(선행모음)</td>
<td>(후행모음)</td>
<td>(축약과 탈락)</td>
<td>(보기)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>아</td>
<td>아(어)</td>
<td>아(어)</td>
<td>가요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오</td>
<td>오(어)</td>
<td>오(어)</td>
<td>빌요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이</td>
<td>이(어)</td>
<td>이(어)</td>
<td>세요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>우</td>
<td>우(어)</td>
<td>우(어)</td>
<td>배우요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오</td>
<td>오(어)</td>
<td>오(어)</td>
<td>가르치요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>하</td>
<td>하(어)</td>
<td>하(어)</td>
<td>일하기요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As can be observed in the figure above, when the preceding vowel and following vowel are identical, one of the vowels is deleted (가아로 가서아로서); if the vowels are different, a preceding ‘-어’ is deleted (쓰아로 서). In the remaining cases, vowel contraction occurs.

In cases where a consonant intervenes between the preceding and following vowel, contraction and deletion are blocked.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>동사</th>
<th>동사어간-어(아, 여).요</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>잡다</td>
<td>잡아요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>좀다</td>
<td>좀이요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>먹다</td>
<td>먹이요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>죽다</td>
<td>죽이요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>듣다</td>
<td>듣이요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>살다</td>
<td>살이요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Honorification by Means of Lexical Expressions

The Korean language contains a number of forms called ‘honorific forms’ which are inherently honorific (or sometimes humble) in their meaning, and correspond to a non-honorific form of the same meaning. However, it is not the case that all forms have an honorific counterpart, and it is necessary to learn the various possible honorific—non-honorific pairs in order to use the honorific forms correctly in sentences.

(Figure 17) below summarizes the situation with ‘honorific forms’ in Korean according to Part of Speech. These ‘honorific forms’ are special lexical items which connote either exaltation—honorification or, conversely, humilification—deference; some ‘honorific forms’ are morphologically unrelated to their corresponding noun or verb, while others are derived through the addition of suffixes or particles with honorific meaning.

(Figure 17) Honorification by Means of Lexical Expressions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part of Speech</th>
<th>Plain Form</th>
<th>Honorific Form</th>
<th>Deferential Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>말</td>
<td>말씀</td>
<td>말씀</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>나이</td>
<td>현재</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>밝다</td>
<td>정지</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>방</td>
<td>명환</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>집</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pronoun</td>
<td>그 사랑</td>
<td>그 분</td>
<td>지</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>나</td>
<td></td>
<td>지회</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>우리</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>겔다</td>
<td>드리다</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>문다/말하다</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

선생님이 그렇게 말씀하셨어요.
The teacher said so.

제 말씀은 그것이 아님마다.
That’s not what I’m saying.

아버지 언제는 신 다섯이고 제 나이는 스토렐입니다.
My mother is 55 and I’m 23.

아침 점심 뭐예요, 할아버지.
Breakfast is served, grandfather.

목사님! 안녕히 주무셨어요?
Good morning, Reverend!

박사님, 내일 또 불겠어요.
See you tomorrow, Dr. [So-and-so].

아버지께 드리라고 꽃을 삽었어요.
I bought some flowers to give to my father.

아버지께서 할머님을 모시고 오라고 하셨어요.
Mother said to bring grandmother over.

지회 아버님은 10년 전에 돌아가셨습니다.
Our father passed away ten years ago.

지금 어디가 계심니까?
Who is at home now?

말이 참수세요. 과일이 싱싱하죠?
Help yourself, the fruit is fresh, isn’t it?
어른께 여쭈고, 친구 집에 놀러 가겠어요.
I’ll just ask my folks if I can go over to my friend’s place.

---

### Chapter Twelve

**Negation**

Negation in Korean takes different forms depending on the type of sentence and the nature of the predicate. (Figure 18) below summarizes these different forms.

![Korean Negation Patterns](image)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb Type</th>
<th>Sentence Type</th>
<th>Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>동작동사</td>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>‘안’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>‘없’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Long Form</td>
<td>‘-지 않(아니하)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>‘지 말’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>상대동사</td>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>‘있지 않(아니하)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>‘있지 않(아니하)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Copula</td>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>‘-이/가 아니다’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>‘-이/가 아니다’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘있다’ be, exist; have</td>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>‘-이/가 없다’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'알다’ know</td>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>‘모르다’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Negation in Declarative and Interrogative Sentences

Negation in declarative and interrogative sentences can be divided into two types: Short-front Negation and Long-form Negation. The former consists of placing ‘‘있다’’ or ‘‘없다’’ immediately before the verb, whereas the latter consists of the patterns in ‘‘-지 않다(아니하다)’’ or ‘‘-지 못하다’’.

Negated sentences containing ‘‘있다’’ and ‘‘없다(아니하다)’’ imply that the negated verb or state is the will or intention of the agent, and occur with both action verbs and descriptive verbs. Negated sentences containing ‘‘못하다’’ and ‘‘-지 못하다’’ imply that the negated verb or state results from a lack of ability on the part of the agent or else from external forces beyond the control of the agent. This latter type of negation is compatible with action verbs, but is not commonly found with descriptive verbs.

Examples:

- Cholsu went to school.
  - Cholsu didn’t go to school [he chose not to].
  - Cholsu didn’t go to school [he was not able to].

- Those flowers are pretty.
  - Those flowers are not pretty.
  - Aren’t those flowers pretty?

Note that in the case of verbs formed by attaching the suffix ‘‘-하다’’ to nouns, ‘‘있다’’ and ‘‘없다’’ must intervene between the noun and ‘‘-하다’’.

Examples:

- Cholsu is doing his homework now.
  - Cholsu is not doing his homework now.
  - Cholsu is not able to study Korean now.

- Cholsu is studying Korean now.
  - Cholsu is not able to study Korean now.
2. Negation in Imperative and Propositive Sentences
(명령문과 칭유문의 부정)

Negation in imperative and propositive sentences is expressed with the pattern in ‘-지 말-’.

Examples:
- Go home!
- Don’t go home!
- Let’s go home!
- Let’s not go home.

3. Lexical Negation (단어에 의한 부정)

When the predicate is the copula ‘-이다’, it is negated by changing ‘-이다’ to ‘-아/가 아니다’. When the predicate is the existential verb ‘있다’, it is negated by changing it to ‘없다’. Finally, the negative form for the verb ‘알다’ know is ‘모르다’.

Examples:
- Cholsu is a student.
- Cholsu is not a student.
- There is a book on the desk.
- There is no book on the desk.

4. Negation in Confirmation Questions (확인 의문문에 쓰이는 부정)

Though negative in form, this pattern has no negative meaning and instead is used to seek confirmation of the content of the predicate. In such cases, only the Long Form negation can be used.

Examples:
- Isn’t this kimchi hot? [I assume so, please confirm]
- Didn’t Cholsu go home? [I assume so, please confirm]
- Haven’t you eaten? [I assume so, please confirm]
- Haven’t you learned this sentence already? [I assume so, please confirm]
- Didn’t I inform you [about this] last time? [I assume so, please confirm]
Chapter Thirteen

Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings

As we explained in Chapter Eight, Korean verbal conjugational endings consist of three broad types; final endings which can finish sentences, connective endings which link one sentence or clause to another, and derivational endings which convert a sentence or phrase into a unit which can then be redeployed as a constituent part of a larger sentence (i.e. adnominalizers and nominalizers). In this chapter we examine these conjugational endings in more detail.

1. Final Endings (종결어미)

Final endings in Korean can be divided into five types.

Examples:
- 나는 집에 갑니다.
  - I'm going home.
- 나는 시장에서 사과를 사갔다.
  - I'm going to buy apples at the market.
- 학생이 도서관에 많습니까?
  - Are there many students in the library?
- 지금 무엇을 하나?
  - I wonder what he's doing now?
Goodbye.
Please read this newspaper.
Well then, let’s eat lunch.
Let’s see a movie together.

(Figure 19) Final Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE</th>
<th>Verb Stem + Final Ending</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>Vst+- 옌니다</td>
<td>감니다</td>
<td>Verb stems ending in vowels take 올니다, 올니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>Vst+- 옌가</td>
<td>감니까</td>
<td>Omit 옌가?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>Vst+ 싶소</td>
<td>가십시오</td>
<td>Verb stems ending in consonants take 올니다, 올니다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposative</td>
<td>Vst+- 옌다</td>
<td>감니다</td>
<td>Descriptive verb stems take 야보, 야보</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exclamatory</td>
<td>Vst+ (는) 군요</td>
<td>가는군요</td>
<td>군요</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1) Final Endings and Speech Levels (중정이미의 상태높임)

One characteristic feature of Korean is the way in which its speech levels differ according to the age, social position, family relations, etc. of the speaker and listener. The deference relationship between speaker and hearer is expressed in final endings. We treat this problem in more detail in Chapter Eleven. (see page 199).

2) Final Endings with Special Uses (특별한 쓰임의 중정이미)

Among Korean final endings, besides those forms which simply conclude sentences in a straightforward, factual way, there are also endings which include in their meaning the speaker’s attitude or judgement about his/her utterance, or else which probe the listener for his/her intentions or reactions.

Vst- (으)로 (으)로
will it be/do? shall I/we…? Do you suppose it is - does?

Depending on whether the subject is first-person (I, we) or non-first person, this interrogative final ending can express either inference ~conjecture or will~intention. The ‘으’ can be added to express politeness.

When the subject is first person singular (I), this ending asks the listener for his opinion about the proposed action.

Examples:

 Shall I introduce myself first?
Shall I try giving a call ‘once’ to his office?
whether or not to come to school next semester.
He's unable to decide whether he should go abroad to study or not.
I debated whether to write letters or do my homework and ended up doing nothing.
I'm agonizing over whether to continue my studies or get married.

Vst-(으)ㄹ까 하다
is thinking of doing; thinks it/one might

This pattern expresses a conjecture or a plan about an action to occur in the future, and appears in a wide variety of forms like -(으)ㄹ까 해서, -(으)ㄹ까 하고, -(으)ㄹ까 해도, -(으)ㄹ까 하니까, etc.

Examples:

I'm thinking of taking it easy at home this weekend.
I went to the library thinking I might read a book.
I brought an umbrella, thinking it might rain.
I came out to Seoul Station thinking I might go on a trip.

Vst-(으)ㄴ/는/(으)ㄹ 걸
although (in spite of the fact that) it is or does/will do or be; indeed, despite anticipations or reservations to the contrary; but, anyway; so there! (it's) too bad that...; too bad but...

This pattern conveys the idea that the action or state expressed by the verb occurs or is the way it is despite and contrary to whatever expectations what might normally have. The version in -(으)ㄹ 걸 refers to an action or state which is currently underway or which is habitual in nature, and the version in -(으)ㄴ 걸 expresses a conjecture about an action or state which is to come about in the future. This pattern can attach '으' to express politeness.

Examples:

It's vacation but [contrary to what you might expect] the libraries are still open.
When it comes to other people's problems, she [contrary to what you might expect] rolls up her shirtsleeves and comes to the rescue.
Actually [contrary to what you might expect] that student graduated from graduate school last year.
Actually [contrary to what you might expect] it is dangerous to cross [the street] without looking at the signal.
Actually, [contrary to what you might expect] in fall all the hotels are fully booked.

Vst-(으)랬다 (그랬다)
(I wish I had) but... (I didn't) - regretting missed or lost opportunities; one should have (but didn't)

This pattern is used to express regret about actions not taken. It is usually followed by '그랬다' at the end, but this can also be omitted.

Examples:

I feel sick to my stomach - I should have skipped lunch.
If I had known my friends were coming, I wouldn't have gone out.
If I had known it was a long weekend from today, I would have gone on
It would have been better if I had prepared for the exam ahead of time.

*Vi*-

It would have been better if I had prepared for the exam ahead of time.

despite the fact that is has been (loins (or being done); anyway, despite reservations, after all, indeed, so there!

Originally an abbreviation from '던 걸었', this pattern expresses the idea that one has come to know new facts while recalling past events already experienced, or else expresses regret or wistfulness about an action or state experienced in the past. One can add '-야' to the pattern to express politeness.

**Examples:**

- 그 애가 그림을 재법 잘 그려던걸.
  Actually [contrary to what you might have been thinking] that child drew quite well [as I recall].
- 보기 그해도 음식이 맛이 좋았던걸.
  It didn't look like much, but [contrary to what might have been expected] the food tasted good [as I recall].
- 그학생이 자리에는 흔한에 타니던걸.
  Actually, [contrary to what you might have been thinking] that student was attending private evening classes [as I recall].
- 예쁘게 꾸미니까 그 여자에도 잘함던걸.
  Actually, [contrary to what you might have been thinking] once she was nicely made up, she wasn't bad looking!
- 여기 자기 알아보니가 그만한 잘장도 없던걸.
  Actually, after looking around for a while, I realized that [contrary to what one might have expected] there weren't any other jobs half as good.

*Vst-(으)ㄹ게(요)
(I promise) I'll do it right away

This pattern produces a declarative form in which the speaker both avers and guarantees the same action, and is always used in the first person (I, we). The addition of '–요.' makes the pattern polite.

**Examples:**

- 오늘은 집에 일찍 들어 온게.
  I'll come home early today.
- 내가 그 일을 할게.
  I'll do it [I promise]-Let me do it.
- 숙제부터 하고 지덕을 먹은게요.
  First I'll do my homework then I'll eat supper.
- 내일 오전에 신흥남에 전화드릴게요.
  I'll call my teacher tomorrow in the morning.
- 시장에 가지 좋은 물건이 있으면 하나 살게요.
  If there are any good ones at the market, I'll buy one.

*Vst-(으, 였)구나
Vst-(는)군/구나
Vst-(겠)구나

well I see... well so it is... so it is! so it seems! well I'll be (damned)! hey look! you see, don't you know, isn't it, indeed (showing a sudden or first realization, confirmation, interest, delight, surprise, astonishment or insistence)

This exclamatory pattern has several different forms depending on the tense. The form

'–였, 였)구나' is used for actions or states which occurred in the past or persist into the present from the past, the form '–(는)군/구나' is used for actions or states occurring in the present, and the form '–겠구나' is used to express a sudden realization about a possible or conjectured future action or state. When the polite '요.' attaches, it attaches to the shortened form of '구나', i.e. '군(요).'. (See page 220).

**Examples:**

한국말을 공부하시는군요.
Oh, I see you're studying Korean!
Say, those kids speak really well!
Oh, so you've been a good student since way back!
Hey, it's really cold today!
Judging by the way it's raining, I guess it'll be cold tomorrow!

This pattern creates a somewhat soft interrogative form, and can take the polite ‘ york’. It can also be changed to ‘ -(으)니까 보다’ with little difference in meaning.

Examples:
- What's the best way to learn a foreign language quickly?
- If someone at the top is replaced, do the people beneath him get replace too?
- She seems to be tired. She said something about having stayed up all night,
- It seems the weather is quite cold outside.

The pattern in ‘ -(으)니까 보다’ is used with descriptive verbs.

Examples:
- She seems to be tired. She said something about having stayed up all night.
- It seems the weather is quite cold outside.
- It seems he is happy because he married someone he loved.

In the non-past tense this pattern tends to be used only with action verbs, but when the verb stem is in the past tense, there are no such restrictions on the type of verb. Note also that action verbs can optionally take ‘ -(으)니까 보다’.

Examples:
- It seems there is nobody in the classroom.
- Apparently he is leaving on a business trip tomorrow or so.
- Looks like lots of guests are coming today.
‘->'; this pattern implies that the action has been completed.

**Examples:**
- 내가 한 친구에게 그런 거짓말을 했던가?
  - Why did I lie to my friend like that?
- 그가 미안해 우리가 왜 붙잡지 안했던가?
  - Why didn't we try to stop him from leaving?
- 왜 본 영화가 재미있었던가?
  - Was the movie you saw yesterday interesting?
- 그 여자 친구 마음에가 좋아?
  - Did the girlfriend have a pleasant disposition?
- 음악 리스트 나가보니 산책 붙이 많이 열렸던가?
  - When you went out onto the street were many of the stores open?

Vst-(으/는)담
[usually to oneself] do you mean to say that…?! don’t tell me that…! really?! (shows incredulity, irritation, complaint or reproach … often of oneself)

In origin, this pattern is an abbreviation of an indirect speech construction like ‘-(으/는)담 말한가’ or ‘-(이)람 말한가’. When used with action verbs, it takes the shape ‘-(으/는)담’, when used with descriptive verbs it takes the shape ‘(으)담’, and when used with the copula it takes the shape ‘-(으)담’. The pattern is used for making light complaints or reproaches to oneself, and does not participate in speech levels; however, it can also be used to express the speaker’s dissatisfaction about the hearer’s actions.

**Examples:**
- 나무 맞을 그렇게 한담.
  - Why did he talk in such a way?
- 마음대로 그렇게 소리 내어 먹는담.
  - What is he eating that he has to make so much noise doing it?
- 몰래 그렇게 무언가 했다.
  - What with all the wriggling and fidgeting.
- 저런 사람이 무슨 양반이냐.

Since when is a person like that a "yangban"!

Vst-데(요)
it has been observed that, it is known that, as we all (or as I) know, I fear (have been told) that, I’ve discovered (found out) that

This final reporting ending is used when recalling a past event in conversation, or when telling one’s counterpart something on the basis of one’s past experience of some event. This ending is easily confused in speech with the ending in ‘- kepada’ abbreviated from the indirect speech pattern in ‘-(으/는)다고 해요’, but has a different structure. Rather, this ending is a retrospective form based on the retrospective morpheme ‘-타’, and has its origins in the now moribund “Familiar” speech level ‘-(가, -래, -세, -(으)라고, etc.).

**Examples:**
- 밖의 날씨가 잘 좋네요.
  - It’s quite cold outside [as I recall]
- 오랜만에 맘 훈련 운동을 하고 나니가 좋네요.
  - It felt really good to work up a sweat exercising after such a long time.
- 산폭대기에서 산산이 잘 보이네요.
  - I could see Namsan really well from the top of the mountain [I recall].
- 그 친구 별세 머리가 벗어졌네요.
  - He had already gone bald [as I recall].
- 새벽쟁에 나가보니 가 말씀대로 사람이 무지 많네요.
  - I checked out the early morning market and, just as you said, there were tons of people.

Vst-(으)근라
lest, for fear that it will (often introduces a command after a warning)

This pattern is used primarily with action verbs, and is used to advise caution when one is worried or concerned that something might go
wrong.

Examples:

(Don't climb up there you might fall out of the tree.)

Stop eating — you might get a stomach ache.

Watch what you're saying — you might get chewed out.

AVst-(으)ền 락 말락 하다
(is) on the point/ verge of doing, almost does, (hesitates) whether to do (or not)

This pattern indicates that an action appears to be on the verge of happening but does not come to fruition. It also appears in combination with the negative auxiliary ‘말다’ followed by a form of the verb ‘하다’: ‘-(으)ền 락 말락 하다’. The verb of the preceding clause must be an action verb.

Examples:

The couple was whispering in a voice so quiet that you could barely make out what they were saying.

It's been trying to rain on and off since this morning.

The baby was about to fall asleep, a guest came and woke it up.

Just as my pocket money was about to dry up, some money arrived from my folks.

AVst-(으)근래 (으)
intends/plans/wants to do; is going to do, will do, is ready/prepared/ willing to do, has it in mind to do, is out to do

This pattern is used with action verbs; when used with a first-person subject (I) it expresses the intention of the speaker, and when used with a second-person subject (you), it asks after the thoughts and intentions of the hearer. This pattern is not compatible with third-person (he, she, it, they) subjects. It can add the ‘으’ for politeness.

Examples:

I feel like eating kimchi pokkum.

What do you want to do after graduation?

Say Yong-su do you want to take out a monthly-deposit savings account?

Teacher — When can you meet with me?

Vst-(으)냐?
shall/should I? do you want me to?; will it do/be? (usually rhetorical)

This rhetorical interrogative ending is used by the speaker to ask his/her counterpart's opinion of a future action to be performed by the speaker. It can also be used to express the speaker's opposition or negative attitude, along the lines of “given the present state of affairs, surely that could not be the case.”

Examples:

If it’s difficult for you, would you like me to help?

행동천문학 몄 사주라?
What would you like me to buy you for your birthday?
우리가 널 만나보려 가라?
Do you want us to come see you or not?
이제 후회할을 무슨 소용이 있으라?
What the use of regretting it now?
뭐어간다고 바나버린 버스를 따라잡을 수 있으랴?
Do you think running after it will help you catch a bus that has already
gone?

NB: We treat the reduplicated pattern in ‘-아/어요’ in the section on connective endings. (See page 294).

Vst-(으)러무나/(으)렴
do please, come now (an endearing command)

This final ending is used to inferiors to express a tender imperative or granting of permission to act in accord with the speaker’s wishes. The form in ‘- yarg’ is an abbreviation from ‘-아/어요러무나’.

Examples:

&공 싶으다면 민이보다무나.
Go ahead and eat it if you like.
&공에하거는 눈 좀 붓어럼.
If you’re tired, go ahead and take a little nap.
&공사숙고하시 경청하러무나.
Give it serious consideration and then make your decision.
&공 두었으니 이제 그만 가렴.
It’s late now, so why don’t [you kids] go home now, OK?
&공 들어와 가보렴, 어디로 가나.
Why don’t you tag along with her, and see where she goes?

Vst-(으)리라
(it is that) it will do/be; is to do/be; is [probably]

This future ending expresses the speaker’s conjecture or opinion about the future.

Examples:

발사하는 살다보면 외로우리라.
If you live abroad for a while it is bound to be lonely.
그가 바라는 것은 돈만이 아니리라.
It’s probably not just the money that he is interested in.
시간이 주어지면 세계여행을 미리리라.
If the time presents itself, I’ll probably go on a trip around the world.
오후에 미가 오리라고 생각했지만.
Of course, I was thinking it would probably rain in the afternoon.
칠이 들면 재담으리라고 봅니다.
I reckon she’ll figure it out once she’s a little more mature.

Vst-(으)서라
(exclamation referring to an exalted person)

This pattern is a combination of the subject honorific ‘-아/어요’ and the exclamatory ‘-아서라’, and is usually only compatible with descriptive verbs or the copula ‘-이다’. The ending expresses a combination of the subject honorification and speaker emotion; because of the latter element, you will often find it used in conjunction with exclamations like 아유, 아이고, 아이나, 아라, etc.

Examples:

아유, 부지런히 하서라.
My, she sure is diligent!
아이나, 에빠기도 하서라.
My goodness, that sure is pretty!
아이고, 인정도 많으서라.
Boy, she sure is considerate!
아라, 성미도 급하서라.
Boy has he got a quick temper!
아이나, 기력력도 좋으서라. 제 이름을 기억하시다나……
Wow, you remember my name? What a good memory you have!

Vst 지(요)
(often invites confirmation or agreement, but sometimes also used for insistence or reassurance) suppose, I suppose/guess/think/believe;
if I am not mistaken; I venture to say, I daresay, I bet, I say, it seems to me; you know, you see, don’t you know, wouldn’t you say.

This ending expresses either a) the speaker’s opinion of strong conviction about a certain fact or state of affairs, or b) that the fact or state of affairs referred to is something already known to both speaker and hearer. The ‘-요’ can be added for politeness. Note also that ‘-지요’ can be abbreviated to ‘-조’.

Examples:
네가 김 영수라는 학생이지?
You’re the student Kim Yongso, aren’t you?

한국에 처음 오신 계 아니지요?
This isn’t your first time in Korea, is it?

저 좀 도와 주실 수 있으시죠?
You can give me hand, right?

늘었는데 벌써 가시지요.
It’s late — shouldn’t you be going?

예, 그러죠. 내일 다시 오겠어요.
Yes, I’d better. I’ll come again tomorrow.

2. Conjunctive Endings (연결에미)

When two or more sentences or words are joined together, conjunctive endings attach to the verb of the preceding sentence or clause so as to join the two clauses together as one.

Examples:
여름은 덥다 + 겨울은 춥다.
The summers are hot. The winters are cold.

→ 여름은 덥고 겨울은 춥다.
The summers are hot and the winters are cold.

Because conjunctive endings connect together two sentences in such a way as to express a special meaning, each one has its own special function and meaning. Below we exemplify, one by one, each of the most important conjunctive endings in Korean along with an examination of their functions and usages.

Vst-거나
whether... or... (shows indifference to a choice between two conflicting actions or states); what (when, where, how... —) ever

Examples:
주말엔 봉산을 가거나 수영을 해요.
On the weekends we either go hiking or go swimming.

방안에 가 보거나 약이라도 쓰다 드세요.
Why don’t you go to the hospital or at least buy some medicine or something?

울프거리 외로움 류 무모년께 전화를 하죠.
When I’m sad or lonely I call my parents, of course.

출장중에 누가 찾아오거나 연락이 오거나 하면 같이 놓으세요.
If anybody calls or drops by while I’m out, please make a note of it.

말이 많은가 행동이 가범하거나 한 사람은 믿을 수 없어요.
People who talk too much or who are frivolous in their actions can’t be trusted.

This pattern can also be used when a set of more than one state or action is conceptualized (i.e. generalized) as one, without regard to details. In such cases, the pattern is used with either a) a question word,
or b) a pair of verbs of opposite meaning, and can be followed by ‘-건에’
for emphasis. In cases like these, the ‘-거나’ can be shortened to ‘-거’.

**Examples:**

“혼자 있을 때에는 누구이거나 간에 문을 열어주지 마라. When you’re alone, don’t open the door for anyone (‘no matter who it might be.’)

“일 사람이 무슨 것을 하건 간에 참견하지 않는게 좋아요. Whatever the person next to might do, it is best not to interfere.

“예쁘거나 빼거나 간에 마음치가 고우면 돼요. It doesn’t matter whether she is pretty or not (‘or homely’), as long as she is tender in heart.

어른이 무슨 말을 하건 간에 끼까지 들어야 해. Whenever adults are speaking [to you] [‘no matter what they say’ you should listen until they are finished.

다른 식구들은 빼거나 빼거나 간에 아버지는 술만 마셔요. The father does nothing but drink [alcohol], [not caring] whether the other members of the family eat or starve.

When two predicates of different or opposite meaning are combined, the pattern can be used as ‘-거나 … -거나’ or ‘-거나 -거나’. The implication is that the choice between these two or more predicates is irrelevant or of no consequence, and that, rather, the contents of the following clause are what is truly important.

**Examples:**

“음식이 맛이 있거나 없거나 베고픈일 먹어있조. When you’re hungry you have to eat, whether the food tastes good or not.

“네가 가거나 내가 오거나 하여든 만나면 되지 않겠느냐? Anyhow, whether I go there, or you come here [doesn’t matter], don’t you think getting together will take care of it?

“남이가 잡을 자거나 잡을 하거나 당신이 상관할 바 아니이요. It’s none of your business whether somebody else [i.e. me] sleeps or works [or does whatever].

그 선생은 학생들이 듣거나 말거나 혼자만 얘기합니다.

That teacher just carries on talking to himself, whether the students are listening or not.

울건 말건 내버리두세요.

Just let her cry or whatever.

Vst-거늘

although, while (equivalent to -지만); as, since, when, upon (equivalent to -(으)면)

This pattern is used when the the preceding clause contains a natural or obvious fact or a general truth, and the speaker inserts his/her (often reproachful or combative) opinion in the following clause. In other words, this pattern is used to spotlight the speaker’s argumentative or chastising attitude in light of an obvious or general truth in the preceding clause.

**Examples:**

“김치는 늘 먹는 음식이거늘 한 가지 결론들 어머리. We eat kimchi all the time; so what if we skip it one meal?

“사람은 나이를 먹으면 누구나 놓는 것이거늘 월 그리 숙상해 하나? Everybody gets older with the passing years; what the point of getting so broken up about it?

“저기 무덤을 자기가 찢어늘 이제 왜시 후회할 필요도 없죠. You dug your own grave — what is the point of regrets at this juncture? 그 사람은 늘 늘는 사람이거늘 세삼 말할 필요도 없죠.

“He always late — there’s hardly any need to make a point of discussing it.

“사람은 빈손으로 왔다가 빈손으로 가는 것이거늘 월 그리 욕심내세요?

“We enter this world empty-handed and leave it empty-handed — what is the point of being so greedy?

Vst-거늘 하물며

since or given that … is the case, surely/how much (still) more/less

In this pattern, the final clause is usually a rhetorical question; the
implication is a strong assertion that, given the fact expressed in the preceding clause, the content of the second clause should likewise (and as a matter of course) be the case. In such cases, the second (rhetorical) clause is often introduced by an adverb like ‘하물며, 어색…’ etc.

**Examples:**

Other people’s children acknowledge their merits, so why do their own children behave like this?

Even elementary school kids study hard — how can a college student be such a lazy bum?

Even straw sandals have their mate — how can’t I find a husband?

There are even foreigners who speak Korean well, so how can a Korean say he doesn’t know his own language?

Even young people make an effort to observe the traffic laws, so do you think it is reasonable for an adult to fail to observe them?

와-거너 하다

with the thought that probably/surely, with confidence/assurance that

In this pattern, the -거너 pairs up with 하다 to indicate a [usually untrue, unreasonably optimistic or contrary-to-fact] thought, assumption or reckoning of the speaker or the subject of the preceding clause.

**Examples:**

Practically everybody thinks subconsciously that they are the best (number one).

예를들어 서로 주거너 받거나 아야가가 많았어요.

The couple expressed a wide range of opinions, one proposing to move to a bigger house, and the other suggesting building a new house.
The customer and the store owner wrangled over the price of the merchandise, one claiming it was too expensive, the other claiming it was cheap.

**Vst-거나와**

"together with the likely fact that"—as well as, besides; admitting that; but (even so); not only... but also; moreover, and what more, plus; and even more (so)

This connective ending is used to acknowledge or concede a pre-existing state of affairs or fact before going one step further and mentioning a state of affairs or fact which is one increment greater—lesser—more remarkable, etc.

**Examples:**

- Not only is it hot in the summer, it is also very humid.
- Besides having no money, I also have no time, so I can’t go on a trip.
- Not only did he not study—he didn’t even have any desire to learn.
- I’m repeating myself, but I hope we will never have a tragedy like this again.
- I hope we will never have a tragedy like this again.

- **Vst-거든** provided that, if, when (usually followed by a command, a suggestion, or a promise); if, given that (followed by a rhetorical question)

This conjunctive ending expresses a subjective condition or supposition based in fact in the preceding clause, and sounds most natural when the following clause contains a command or suggestion.

**Examples:**

- If you’re not busy, come on over and visit.
- If you have something to say, please go ahead.
- If you want to meet her, make an appointment ahead of time.
- If you want to build up your abilities, read lots of books.
- If you don’t want to lose to others, then you should exert yourself appropriately.
The ending ‘-(으)ㄹ’ can attach to ‘-거든’ to form the new ending ‘-거든’.
Like ‘-거든’, it expresses a subjective condition or supposition in the preceding clause. Thus, this ending functions more or less like ‘-거든’, with the difference that it is not normally used when the listener is one’s elder or superior.

Examples:
- If the flowers bloom, let’s go for a picnic.
- When you get back to your native country, write me a letter.
- If you have indigestion, take one capsule of this medicine.

This is a final ending, and gives a reason for the speaker’s action or state.

Examples:
- Why haven’t you gone home yet?
- Why did you take a nap?
- Why did you go all the way out to Tongdaemun Market?

Vst-거든
(exclamatory) indeed, quite, surely; (explanatory) you see

This ending is used when the speaker wishes to first make clear his/her situation or attitude with respect to the action or result expressed in the following clause. In other words, the following clause can be interpreted as the object of the verb in the preceding clause with ‘-거든’.

Examples:
- What I am hoping is that you will come back having ultimately succeeded.
- What all of us are hoping for is that they are safe and sound...

Everybody has gone out [you see].
체 가계도 좋지 않아요?
취안에 걱정거리가 생겼어요?
Why aren’t you in a good mood?
A problem has come up at home [you see].
왜 부모님을 주무셨어요?
어제 밤에 잠을 못 잤어요?
Why did you take a nap?
I couldn’t sleep last night [you see].
왜 동네 안에 시장까지 가셨어요?
거긴 물건 많이 사겠어요?
Why did you go all the way out to Tongdaemun Market?
Things are cheap there [you see].
If I may be so bold as to say, this time I will most certainly succeed.

\[\text{Vst-간마는} \]
(\text{semi literary concessive}) but, even though, although, while.

This ending is used to acknowledge a set of prior conditions, while expressing that certain things that should have happened under the conditions of the preceding clause were not done, and remain outstanding. The shortened form in '간만' is also possible.

\textbf{Examples}:

시간이 지남에 따라 손하던 일은 안들었어요.
Quite a lot of time has gone by, and yet, the wounds of flood disaster victims remain.

나이는 먹을 때 막혔건마는 젊은 안 들었어요.
He's old enough in years, but [still] immature.

아들이 용서를 벌였간마는 아버지는 아직도 노여움을 품지 않았습니다.
The son has begged for forgiveness, but his father still hasn't gotten over his anger.

세월은 빠르게 지나 높은 일은 없으니 한심해요.
Time goes by so fast, and yet I'm frustrated that I have accomplished nothing [in life].

할 일을 막혔건마는 일이 순에 감히지 않아 끝일닙니다.
So many things to do, but I'm in big trouble — just can't get down to work.

\[\text{Vst-개방} \]
so that indeed ('개' + intensive '개')

This ending combines '개' in its adverbializing function with the intensifier '게', to generate a meaning akin to that of the patterns in '도록' and '정도로' (so as (to be/do), (in a way) so that, so that it is/does; so that one can; in a manner such that). Sometimes it is also used as '개 시리'.

\textbf{Examples}:

\begin{itemize}
  \item 맞아들을 수 있게 희생히 말씀해 주세요.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Please speak slowly so I can understand you.
  \end{itemize}
  \item 6시에 저녁을 빚게끔 준비했습니다.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item I've made preparations for us to eat supper at 6.
  \end{itemize}
  \item 돈이 모자라지 않게끔 너그럽게 가지시나?
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Have you brought plenty of money so as not to run short?
  \end{itemize}
  \item 서로가 서로를 이해하게끔 노력해 봐.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Please try to understand one another.
  \end{itemize}
  \item 남들의 눈에 의지 않게 시리 눈치껏 하세요.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Please be discreet so as not to attract the attention of others.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\[\text{Vst-고} \]
(is or does) and also, too; (is) and yet, at the same time (often with opposites); does or else (does); A is does and (B is/does); (does) and then doing and then

\[\text{Examples} :\]

\begin{itemize}
  \item 제가 올고, 꽃이 피니요.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item The birds are singing, and the flowers are blooming.
  \end{itemize}
  \item 김 선생은 서울에서 살고, 이 신생은 부산에서 살니다.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Mr. Kim lives in Seoul and Mr. Lee lives in Pusan.
  \end{itemize}
  \item 하늘은 높고, 바다는 깊어요.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item The sky is high, and the ocean is deep.
  \end{itemize}
  \item 산에는 큰고 작은 나무들이 많이 있어요.
  \begin{itemize}
    \item There are lots of big and small trees in the mountains.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\[\text{References} :\]

\begin{itemize}
  \item This ending is used to simply enumerate two or more facts.
  \item \textbf{Examples}:
  \begin{itemize}
    \item \textbf{Examles}:
    \begin{itemize}
      \item 맞아들을 수 있게 희생히 말씀해 주세요.
      \begin{itemize}
        \item Please speak slowly so I can understand you.
      \end{itemize}
      \item 6시에 저녁을 빚게끔 준비했습니다.
      \begin{itemize}
        \item I've made preparations for us to eat supper at 6.
      \end{itemize}
      \item 돈이 모자라지 않게끔 너그럽게 가지시나?
      \begin{itemize}
        \item Have you brought plenty of money so as not to run short?
      \end{itemize}
      \item 서로가 서로를 이해하게끔 노력해 봐.
      \begin{itemize}
        \item Please try to understand one another.
      \end{itemize}
      \item 남들의 눈에 의지 않게 시리 눈치껏 하세요.
      \begin{itemize}
        \item Please be discreet so as not to attract the attention of others.
      \end{itemize}
    \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\end{itemize}
I played the piano and my little sister sang a song.

Yongsu is going to the theatre, and Cholsu is going to school.

Yesterday it rained, and the wind was blowing too.

We waited at the tea house, and he waited at the restaurant.

The child slept and we were talking.

This ending is used to show that the first of two or more events or facts came about prior to the events or facts in the following clauses.

Examples:

- We ate an early breakfast and [then] went to school.
- We read a book and [then] write an essay on our impressions.
- We washed our hands and [then] have our meal.

This ending can be used to show that the contents of the preceding clause are a basis or reason for the contents of the following clause.

Examples:

- Yesterday I took the train to Pusan.
- I put on my backpack and go up the mountain.
- He picked up his briefcase and went outside.

This ending attaches to action verbs and emphasizes the fact that the action in the second clause took place after the preceding action was completed.

Examples:

- After one drink we started to sing.
After admonishing him in a nice way, I didn't actually yell at him [you see].

This ending combines the form in ‘-고’ with particle ‘-도’ in its meanings of moreover, what more, [and] also/ [and] yet. The combined effect of ‘-고’ and ‘-도’ used together in this way is to describe a situation where, after the event or state of affairs in the first clause has been completed, yet another (but unexpected) event or state of affairs comes about.

**Examples:**
- He has even graduated from university, and yet apparently he is just goofing off at home doing nothing.
- You've eaten a huge supper and now you're snacking again? Unbelievable.
- If you can't pull yourself together [even] after one screw-up, what are we supposed to do?
- Are you saying she didn't come even after she had been contacted?

The addition of ‘시’ to ‘-고’ in this pattern has the effect of tightening the relationship between the preceding and following clause, and implying that the contents of the second clause are a natural and closely linked follow-on to those of the first. In other words, whereas ‘-고’ alone is appropriate when a long interval intervenes between the two clauses, ‘-고서’ is appropriate when the connection is more immediate. But one also finds examples where the contents of the second clause oppose, contradict or gainsay those of the preceding clause. This is only possible when the verb in the preceding clause is an action verb. Note that the pattern in ‘-고서’ can also take the auxiliary particles ‘-는’ or ‘-도’ for heightened effect.

**Examples:**
- (does) and then: and then (next): doing and then
- The addition of ‘시’ to ‘-고’ in this pattern has the effect of tightening the relationship between the preceding and following clause, and implying that the contents of the second clause are a natural and closely linked follow-on to those of the first. In other words, whereas ‘-고’ alone is appropriate when a long interval intervenes between the two clauses, ‘-고서’ is appropriate when the connection is more immediate. But one also finds examples where the contents of the second clause oppose, contradict or gainsay those of the preceding clause. This is only possible when the verb in the preceding clause is an action verb. Note that the pattern in ‘-고서’ can also take the auxiliary particles ‘-는’ or ‘-도’ for heightened effect.
Now that they've done all the farming work, they are just waiting for harvest day.

Amazing! He can tell a lie without even batting an eyelash.

I'm telling you if you ignore the traffic laws it is impossible to avoid an accident.

Make sure to write up a book report once you've read the book.

Examples:

I can get to sleep, so I'll have to get some sleep even if it means taking some sleeping pills.

I will finish this job, even if I have to stuff my ears with cotton.

Take care of it even if it entails completing the action in the first clause.

Examples:

I'm thinking of taking a leave of absence and going down to my hometown to take a rest.

Of course, we can't stand as guarantors for him until after we do a background check [lit.: ascertain his status].

She probably felt relieved only once she had heard word that the plane had landed.
Her ambition to succeed is very strong.
All our country's citizens are exerting themselves every day so that we might join the ranks of the industrialized nations.

Since when would somebody get sick because they wanted to get sick?

This pattern combines the ‘-고’ ending in its meaning of concatenation (and) with the form ‘-해서’ meaning since, because. This combination is used to express the notion that, whereas at least two or more reasons or grounds for the resulting state of affairs in the second clause could be enumerated, the speaker chooses to give but one or two. A colloquial English translation would be because... (and stuff).

**Examples:**

Because it was of poor quality (and was expensive and stuff), we didn’t buy it.
The movie was boring (and I was also sleepy and stuff), so I left in the middle.
I wasn’t feeling well and stuff so I stayed home and rested.

Because she’s reliable [and so on] we decided to have her do the work.

Apparently, she is so articulate and so on that they selected her as their representative.

This pattern expresses the speaker’s thoughts, imaginings or suppositions about an action or state of affairs. The pattern in ‘-나 하다’ is used in the same way. Action verbs typically take ‘-는가 하다, ‘-나 하다’ and descriptive verbs usually take ‘-는가 하다’. And of course the verb ‘하다’ in these patterns can interact with a wide variety of other endings and patterns.
Examples:
A magpie cried somewhere, so I wondered if some good news might be coming.
I didn't call you to the phone because I thought maybe you were sleeping.
Just when you think it's raining it clears up, and just when you think it's clearing up, it rains.
I was thinking she had just entered university, and the next thing I know she's graduating!

Vst-(으)나 (adversative) does/is but; though it is/does; admittedly... but

This adversative ending is used to link two sentences when the second clause opposes or does not conform to the contents of the first clause. Its basic meaning is but.

Examples:
It's raining, but I see the wind isn't blowing.
I took some medicine, but my cold hasn't gotten better yet.
I'll follow his opinion, but I refuse to take any of the responsibility.
It's a bit expensive, but of course the quality is just fine.
She was rich until quite recently, but now she has become a beggar.

Two clauses of more or less opposite meaning can each be followed by this ending to express the idea of (whether...) or; or the like; or whatnot. In the whether meaning, these two opposing clauses can be rounded off optionally with 간에. The implication of the pattern is that the contents of the final clause come about without regard to the choices presented in the -(으)나 ... -(으)나 (간에) pattern.

Examples:

Two clauses of more or less opposite meaning can each be followed by this ending to express the idea of (whether...) or; or the like; or whatnot. In the whether meaning, these two opposing clauses can be rounded off optionally with 간에. The implication of the pattern is that the contents of the final clause come about without regard to the choices presented in the -(으)나 ... -(으)나 (간에) pattern.

Examples:

Two clauses of more or less opposite meaning can each be followed by this ending to express the idea of (whether...) or; or the like; or whatnot. In the whether meaning, these two opposing clauses can be rounded off optionally with 간에. The implication of the pattern is that the contents of the final clause come about without regard to the choices presented in the -(으)나 ... -(으)나 (간에) pattern.

Examples:
Whether you look at the way he speaks or what he does, he is a truly insignificant person.
Regardless of whether one considers the house location or view, it's not an expensive one, is it?

Note that the DVst here must be the same stem. This repetition pattern is used in conjunction with descriptive verbs to emphasize or stress a certain quality. The same pattern with ‘-디’ instead of ‘-(으)나’ has the same meaning.

**Examples:**

*He missed the hills and streams of his faraway native land.*
*We ascended the towering mountain and returned.*
*There were piles and piles of incredibly cheap wares.*

This ending attaches to verbs to give the meaning *unsatisfactory though it may be, nonetheless...* Thus, it has a concessive-adversative meaning not unlike the endings ‘-더라도’ and ‘-지마.

**Examples:**

*I know it isn't much, but please accept it as an expression of my sincerity.***
*I'm sure it doesn't taste like much, but do please try some.*

This pattern, built on the ending in -(으)나 plus the -(으)나 form of the negative auxiliary verb ‘있다’, indicates that the preceding action or state is useless, pointless or futile.

**Examples:**

*There is no point in meeting a person so devoid of any sense of responsibility.*
*There is no point in eating that ('it's too insignificant — let's have a proper meal!').*
*There is no point in copying one's assignments from another's notebook.*

This ending attaches to verbs to give the meaning *unsatisfactory though it may be, nonetheless...* Thus, it has a concessive-adversative meaning not unlike the endings ‘-더라도’ and ‘-지마.'
This pattern expresses that the contents of the second clause are better than or preferable to those of the first clause. The second clause can also be accompanied by adverbs like preferably; rather (ihan). The verb in the first clause must be an action verb. One can also add the comparative particle "보다" to this pattern with no change in meaning.

**Examples:**
그 아이를 가다보니 내가 가장.
Why don't I go instead of waiting for her?
이렇게 사느냐보다 죽는 게 낫겠어요.
I would rather die than live like this.
주운 화승집에 가느냐 교실에 있는 게 편해.
It's more comfortable to stay in the classroom than go to my cold boarding room.
그에게 일을 시키느냐 내가 해.
Instead of getting him to do it, you do it yourself.
게 죽음을 당하느냐 차라리 사우나 죽는 게 낫겠어요.
I would rather die fighting than die pitifully like some dog.

Another pattern with this ending juxtaposes two contradictory clauses, each ending in '느니' -= 느니', so as to relate the various deliberations and discourses of third parties. These two (or more) clauses in '느니' are rounded off with a final clause which summarizes or distills the gist of the dispute or issue. One can also use this pattern in conjunction with reported—indirect speech.

**Examples:**
두 사람이 가느냐 안 가느냐 야담입니다.
The two of them are having a big discussion about whether or not to go.
이전부터 백화점으로 가느냐 시장으로 가느냐 의견이 분분하다고.
Ever since this morning there have been conflicting opinions about whether to go to a department store or to an open-air market.

The ending in '-느니까' designates that the preceding clause is the cause or reason for the contents of the second clause, and requires that both clauses have the same subject. Moreover, the contents of the following clause are usually contrary to the expectations or wishes of the speaker. Another constraint on this pattern requires the verb in the first clause to be an action verb; it is the continuation of this first activity which leads to the undesirable result in the following clause.

**Examples:**
저느라고 도둑이 들어온 걸 몰랐어요.
I didn't know a burglar had broken in because I was asleep. [In somewhat 'hick' English this would be 'what with being asleep and all, I didn't notice that—']
이사느라고를 혼났어요.
They were going crazy because of the move.
공부느라고 주름상이 많이 생겼어요.
I got a lot of wrinkles in the course of my studies.
I couldn't go anywhere because I was keeping an eye on the house.

 Мне предлагать потому что я был угрожающий глаз в доме.

 I was too busy thinking about myself that I didn't consider others.

 Я был слишком занят мыслями о себе, что не задумывался о других.

 The three closely related patterns in 

 ‘나라가, -노라니, -노라

 니가’ add the sense of ‘discovery’ inherent in 

 ‘소니가(가)’ to the meanings in (1) above. Here, too, the verb in the first clause must be an action verb, but the subjects in the two clauses need not be the same.

 Examples:

 누워서 책을 읽노라니가 잠이 오더군요.

 Because I was reading lying down I kept getting sleepy. [Lit.: What with reading lying down, I discovered that I was falling asleep!]

 잠노라니가 잠카 나서 못 견디겠어.

 I've been trying to be patient, but [I now discover] that I'm angry and I can't stand it any longer.

 그 아이의 말을 듣고 읽노라니가 지질로 웃음이 나타군요.

 Just listening to the child's story, I couldn't help laughing.

 읽은 문장을 여러 번 외롭게 읽노라니가 외우게 되었어요.

 As a result of reading the same sentence over and over again several times, I [discovered that I had] committed it to memory.

 고향의 부모님을 생각하고 읽노라니가 지절로 눈물이 나타군요.

 Sitting there thinking of my parents back in my native land, I couldn't help crying.

 The variant of this pattern in 

 ‘나라가, -노라니’ designates that, if one assumes that the action of the first clause continues, one will arrive at the results in the second clause. As with patterns (1) and (2) above, the verb in the first clause must be an action verb.

 Examples:

 바쁘게 일을 하노라니. 배고픈 것도 잊어 버리죠.

 If you go about your business busily, you forget that you are even hungry.

 어머니 사진을 보노라니. 어머니가 보고 싶어요.

 If you never think of others' positions, how will you ever be able to
succeed in society?
경찰이 도둑을 잡을 생각을 안 한데서야 시민이 어떻게 마음을 놓고 살겠어요?
If the police don't even bother to catch burglars, how are the citizens supposed to live in peace?
Vst-(으)는데
(given) the circumstance that it does; does ... and/but/so

This connective ending is used with verbs in a preceding clause which, whether directly or indirectly, leads into or provides a transition for the following clause. In many cases it is useful to think of this ending as a sort of verbal semi-colon or m-dash, providing a loose linkage between two clauses.

Examples:
비가 오는데, 우산이 있습니까?
It's raining — do you have an umbrella?
제가 책을 읽는데, 좀 조용히 해 주세요.
I'm reading a book — could you please be quiet?
그 사람은 얼굴이 예쁘는데, 왜 싫어하니까?
But she has a pretty face — why don't you like her?
오늘이 토요일인데, 사무실에 가십니까?
Today is Saturday; and you're going to the office?
내일이 시험 보는데, 학교 공부하기가 쉬위요.
Tomorrow is exam day, but for some reason I don't feel like studying.

In many cases, depending on the nature of the connection between preceding and following clause, this ending can express a variety of concrete meanings such as opposition (and yet), time (when), reason, condition, etc.

Examples:
계속 치료를 하는데, 감기가 낫지 않아요.
I keep applying the treatment, and yet my cold doesn't get better.
혈은 공부하는데, 동생이 밤에 들어 왔어요.

The younger brother came home at night when his older brother was studying.
비가 오는데, 밤에 나가지 마세요.
It's raining, so don't go outside.
날씨가 좋는데, 왜 아직 안 갤까요?
The weather is nice, so let's go on a picnic.
동생문지가 가는데, 몇 분쯤 걸리요?
About how many minutes does it take to get to Tongdaemun?
Vst-(으)는데
even though it is, in spite of the fact that it is, despite that ...

This ending is typically followed by the expression ‘물구하고’, but this ‘물구하고’ is optional. This pattern indicates that the contents of the second clause come about in spite of the contents of the first clause. Another variant of this pattern attaches ‘때도 물구하고’ to the nominalized form of a verb in ‘- (으)ㅁ’, in effect creating a new pattern in ‘- (으)ㅁ에도 물구하고’.

Examples:
알고 있는데도 모르는 게 하더라도.
He pretended not to know in spite of the fact that he knew [I recall].
돈이 많으면도 생활은 형편없이 해요.
In spite of having lots of money, their lifestyle is a disaster.
새 집인데도 비가 오면 하던 새.
In spite of the fact that it is a new house, as soon as it rains the house leaks.
몇 번째나 주의를 주었는데도 기억되지 않아.
I must have cautioned you a million times, and yet you still forget!
미리 예고를 했음에도 불구하고 안 들고 사고를 내버려://
In spite of the fact that we notified them well in advance, they didn't listen and caused an accident.

Vst-(으)니까
since—as it does—is; so ...; and so ...;
when (in the past), then ...; as ...; and—but then...
In its first meaning, this ending is used to indicate that the action or state in the preceding clause is the reason for that of the second clause. Whereas the ending in ‘어(아, 이)시’ expresses general reasons without any time of personal subjectivity, the ending in ‘(으)나’ expresses the speaker’s subjective feeling or attitude toward his/her utterance. The verb in the following clause often consists of an imperative or propositive form.

Examples:
- 오늘은 날씨가 추우니까 옷을 많이 입으세요.
  It’s cold today, so put on lots of clothes.
- 그분은 한국에서 오래 살았으니가 한국말을 잘 할 거예요.
  She has lived in Korea for a long time, so she probably speaks Korean well.
- 제가 잘못했으니까 제가 사과하겠습니다.
  It’s my mistake, so I will apologize.
- 버스는 복잡하니까 택시를 타시다.
  The bus is a hassle, so let’s take a taxi.
- 내일은 일요일이니까 집에서 쉬십시오.
  Tomorrow is Sunday, so why don’t you rest at home.

In the other main usage of this ending, it serves as a temporal marker (when) which also carries a sense of discovery or affirmation—confirmation of what follows in the next clause. In this usage, the subject of the clause with ‘(으)나’ is always first-person (I, we).

Examples:
- 집에 가니까 친구의 편지가 있었습니다.
  When I got home there was a letter from my friend.
- 이 약을 먹으니까 갑갑가 신디군요.
  When I took this medicine, my cold got better [I realized or confirmed].
- 한국말을 꽉부해 보니까 재미있어요?
  Now that you’ve studied some Korean, do you find it interesting?
- 김 선생님 말씀을 듣으니까 저도 잘 할 수 있겠다는 생각이 들어요.
  Listening to what Mr. Kim has to say, I realize now that I can probably also do a good job of it.

Broadly speaking, this ending implies that the contents of the preceding clause ultimately result in the contents of the following clause. But the concrete interpretation of this ending in specific cases depends on the contents of each of the two clauses.

In its first usage, this ending signifies that the preceding clause is the reason, cause or grounds for the following clause. Thus, it is equivalent to ‘(으)나’ above. As with ‘(으)나’, the following clause often contains an imperative or propositive form.

Examples:
- 시간이 없으니까, 좀 서둘러 공항으로 가세요.
  There isn’t any time, so please hurry out to the airport.
- 부지런히 일하는 걸 보니, 성공할 것이 감습니다.
  Judging by the way she works so hard, she will probably succeed.
- 오늘 하루는 집에서 쉬십시오.
  I’m not feeling very well today, so let’s take it easy at home today.
- 쌍자가 되니 지금까지 생각하는군요.
  Now that it’s noon I’m feeling a bit hungry!
- 지나 식당에 저녁 토요이 저서 예쁘군요.
  The evening glow surrounding the sun as it sets is so pretty!

Another function of this ending is to simply denote a connection between a fact presented in the preceding clause and the contents of the following clause. In such cases, it is rare to find an imperative or suppositive verb form in the second clause.
Examples:

It's already a long time since the sun came up and yet he still hasn't
gotten up; what do you suppose is the matter?

She's late every day and [so] I'm getting annoyed.

I'm all out of money, so how will I live on?

It's quiet as a dead mouse flit. [lit.: quiet as if a mouse had died] inside the
house so it would appear that nobody is at home.

Examples:

A&A

Given how goodlooking their parents are, the daughters in that family
are bound to be pretty, too.

Seeing as what important guests they are, be extra careful.

Given our tight time constraints, we have to get a move on right from the
start.

Examples:

Seeing as it is the rainy season just now, you'll have to dry the laundry
right away each time.

Vst-더(가)

(transferentive) does—did (is—was) and then; does—did (is—was)
but; when

The basic function of this ending is to express the idea that an action
or state that was underway or in effect in the past gets interrupted, and
changes or shifts over to some other, different action or state. Note that
the final ‘~가’ is optional.

Examples:

Examples:

Given as what important guests they are, be extra careful.

Seeing as what important guests they are, be extra careful.

Given our tight time constraints, we have to get a move on right from the
start.

Examples:

Vst-하였(었, 었)다가

(transferentive) did—did (was—was) and then; did—did (was—was) but; when

When the transferentive ending in ‘~다가’ attaches to the tense
marker in ‘~았(었, 었)’ which signifies past or completed action, the
implication is that the interrupted or shifted action had come full circle
or been completed before the interruption. This pattern is especially
appropriate for cases where the contents of the first and second clause
contradict each other.

Examples:

악수를 했다고도 취소할 수 있습니까?
You can cancel out even after you’ve [already] promised?

If you don’t use something once you’ve learned it, you forget it.

If we don’t like it, can we return merchandise after we’ve bought it?

Try opening and closing your eyes.

This connective ending combines the transference ‘-다가’ with the auxiliary particle ‘-다’.

*Examples:*

- Even though I’m usually good at it, if somebody tells me to do it, I can’t.
- Sometimes he gets all startled, even in his sleep.
- Good ideas [often] come to mind when you brainstorm with another person for a while.

Vst-다가 보 면

if ~ when one does it over a period of time, then [one discovers]…

This pattern is a combination of the transference pattern in ‘-다가’ plus the conditional form of the verb ‘보-‘ see. One can interpret the pattern more or less literally as: If one does something over a period of time, then interrupts [that action] and takes a look back at the process until that point in time [one discovers some result or emotion].

*Examples:*

- If you eat at the same table as somebody else for a period of time, you come to feel affection from both positive and negative emotions for the person.
- Good ideas [often] come to mind when you brainstorm with another person for a while.

Vst-다가도

even though one does ~ did (is ~ was), still ~ nonetheless; does ~ did (is ~ was) but still; when ~, still ~ nonetheless
Once you live long enough, all kinds of crazy things can happen.

If you live life in too regimented a fashion, there are lots of times when you get cranky.

If you live in suffering by yourself for a while, you develop a sense of independence and confidence.

Vst-더(가) 보니

as a result of doing it over a period of time, one discovers...

This pattern is a combination of the transerentive pattern in ‘-더가’ plus the ‘-(으)니(가)’ form of the verb ‘보-’ see. One can interpret the pattern more or less literally as: AS a result of doing something over a period of time, and then interrupting [that action] and taking a look back at the process until that point in time [one discovers some result or emotion]. Thus, the pattern is virtually identical in function to Vst-더(가) 보니 above.

Examples:

Once I got wrapped up in it, I lost all track of time.

We had been sitting there eating for a while, when the next thing I know the person who had been seated in front of me had disappeared!

I was busy going about my life and the next thing I know I have wrinkles on my face!

I was having a drink with my friends and the next thing I knew it was way past the time to go home.

I was spending money left and right, and the next thing I know an entire month salary had gone out the window!

was intending to … but then…

This pattern combines the purposive ending in ‘-(으) 리다’ with the transferentive ending in ‘-더가’, and in origin is a contraction from ‘-고 하다’ via deletion of ‘-고 하-’. The pattern expresses the idea that the idea, plan or intention in the first clause was never realized, and that the results in the following clause came about instead. The verb of the preceding clause must be an action verb.

Examples:

She was going to remarry again, but couldn't because of the children.

I was going to call, but it was too late so I couldn’t.

I was going to make a formal proposal to the company, but decided to defer it until a later time.

We were going to import the raw materials, but then decided to produce them ourselves.

I was going to give the children a good scolding but then decided to let it go one more time.

Vst-(으)리다(가) 얻고

was intending to … but then changed course and [instead]…

This pattern combines the pattern in ‘-(으)리다가’ above with the ‘-고’ form of the verb ‘말다’ designating negation (stop, desist).

Examples:

What are you doing up? I thought you were going to bed.

I was going to take a taxi but then changed my mind and ran over toward the bus.
He was going to say something but then changed his mind and left.
He was going to say something but instead burst into tears.
I was going to give her some pocket money but instead I just stuck the wallet in my pocket.

Vst-다 못해
unable to succeed in one attempt at ...ing, ..., overcome by the attempt to ..., at the extreme, in the extreme case of (doing), (even) driven by necessity (to do), (even) at the worst

This pattern expresses the idea the action or state in the preceding clause cannot be continued, or else is of an extreme or excessive degree. In particular, in cases where it expresses an extreme degree, the noun which expresses the action or state of the following clause can take ‘-까지’.

Examples:
그녀는 참다 못해 터졌고 말았어요.
Unable to control herself any longer, she burst into tears.
그 음식을 맛다 못해 개에게 주었어요.
Unable to finish all the food, I gave it to the dog.
아단치다 못해 벌리기까지 했어요.
Sick and tired of scolding, she even struck them.
그 금을 보고 놀다 못해 가두리치기까지 했으셨어요.
Overcome by the shock of reading the document, she even fell into a swoon.
거짓말을 하다 못해 이젠 숙이기까지 하니?
What — white lies not good enough, and you have to outright cheat now?

Vst-다순 차더라도
even though we suppose that ..., even supposing that ..., one admits that such-and-such is the case, but ..., even if one might acknowledge that such and such is the case, nevertheless...

This rather emphatic pattern signifies that the speaker cannot readily accept the contents of the first clause, and that even if (s)he hypothetically supposes the contents of the preceding clause to be the case, (s)he nonetheless cannot accept the situation of the following clause. In other words, even if the contents of the first clause are to be accepted or acknowledged, the following clause cannot be accomodated.

Examples:
아무리 욕심이 많다순 차더라도 그만하면 만족하다겠지.
No matter how greedy he might be, that should be enough to satisfy him.
갈 때는 비행기로 간다순 차더라도 온 때에는 비행기로 올 수 없어요.
Even supposing you go by airplane on the way there, there is no way for you to come back by plane.

아무리 빠르고 없다고 하더라도 어른 앞에서 담배를 피울 수 있나요?

Ill-mannered as he may be, how could he smoke in front of adults?

I know there is little on this earth that we can trust, but for a child to distrust its own parents!!

아무리 시간이 얼마나 되더라도 밤 밖은 시간이다.

I know we’re short of time, but surely we can find time to eat?

in a way that tends to do, in a way inclined toward doing, in a way such that it is possible - likely; in a way that is virtually in accordance with, practically, virtually, as much as to do, almost, as if to… “like-to”

In the first of its uses, this pattern tends to occur with verbs of perception like ‘알다’ know, ‘보다’ see, and ‘들다’ hear in a number of set phrases or idiomatic expressions meaning in accordance with what the subject has experienced. Thus, the following clause reconfirms the contents of that experience.

Examples:

보시다시피, 눈로 돌지 않아 바람니다.
As you can see, I’m so busy I barely have time to breathe.

보시다시피, 작년에 비해 물가가 많이 내렸어요.
As you may have heard through the media, prices have gone a lot compared to last year.

여러분도 아시다시피, 세계 경제가 많이 아닙니다.
As you all know, the world situation is a mess.

보시다시피, 우리는 지금 어려운 처지에 놓여 있습니다.
As you can see, we are now facing a difficult situation.

보시다시피, 나는 한국에 처음 왔어요.
As you know, I am in Korea for the first time.

Followed by a form of the verb ‘하다’, this ending creates a new pattern in ‘하다’ which indicates (somewhat exaggeratedly) that something happens almost or virtually in the same way as the verb in the preceding clause.

Examples:

그는 우리 집을 재 져 드나들다시피 합니다.
He frequents our house almost as much as he does his own.

작은 아버지가 그의 학비를 거의 대다시피 했어요.
His uncle practically paid his tuition.

약을 먹고 하루 종일 자다시피 했더나.
Apparently, after taking the medicine he slept practically the whole day.

어젯밤은 동 남으로 새우다시피 했어요.
Last night I couldn’t sleep for practically the whole night.

너무 바빠서 빠이너다시피 하가네요.
I see he is so busy that he is practically running around the place.

This pattern incorporates the retrospective marker ‘-다’(see page 194) and the ending ‘-(으)나’ in its explanatory meaning (since, as, because; see page 267). The preceding clause presents some past experience as a grounds or pretext for presenting some related result in the following clause. The concrete meaning of this connective ending in any one case depends on the exact nature of the contents of the preceding and following clauses.

In one of its meanings, this pattern allows the speaker to affirm that some fact which (s) he directly experienced or witnessed in the past about a third-person subject is the reason or source for the state of affairs in the following clause. In this usage, the ending attaches directly to the verb stem. The subject is usually second or third person.

Examples:
She practiced so hard and now she's really good at it! The baby was crying and now it is asleep. Or: The baby cried itself to sleep.

She read the letter and then started to cry.

It would appear she has an upset stomach from eating too much.

It has a nice color to it and I see it tastes good, too!

In another usage, this pattern recollects the contents of the preceding clause as something directly experienced, and relates these to the contents of the following clause, which are the result of changes over the course of time.

**Examples:**

When he was a child he cried all the time but [now] he has grown much more mature.

This used to be a residential area, but now it is filled with entertainment enterprises.

Yesterday it was cold, but today is warm!

Yesterday he was in a good mood, but today he looks down.

First it was windy, and now it is even raining.

When attached to the past tense marker in ‘-았(었, 였)’, this ending signifies that the completed, and directly experienced results of the event in the first clause continue into, and serve as the grounds and basis for the second clause. The subject of the ‘-더니’ form in this case is usually the speaker, and the subject of the following clause is usually different.

**Examples:**

I went to school early, only to find that he was already there. She was so happy to see me when I met her.

I bought some clothes yesterday, and [to and behold!] a whole month salary went out the window.

I laughed, and [discover now that] my stomach hurts.

I gave the child a bit of a admonishing, and [to my surprise or consternation] he cried.

This ending can also combine with the delimiter ‘-만’ just, only; that extent, to form the combination ‘-더니만’, in which case it has the effect of an intensified or emphatic ‘-더니’. The subject of the verb is usually second or third person.

**Examples:**

She went once, and never came again.

The child gets just one shot, and then burst into tears.

Mother was so physically exhausted from work that she suffered somewhat of a breakdown.

He was ill for such a long time that he has become quite emaciated.

All my little brother had was a glass of wine, but his mood improved a lot.
This pattern concedes or acknowledges the contents of the preceding clause, but states that the contents of the following clause must nevertheless be the case. Sometimes the preceding concessive clause is prefaced by adverbs like however (much), no matter (how), which has the effect of emphasizing the following clause all the more.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I don't care how difficult the job may be, you can't quit in the middle of it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't care how tempestuous the weather might be.</td>
<td>I insist on starting my journey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't care how much pain and suffering it entails—I will live on patiently and stoically.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't care how confident you are, it'll do you good to listen to some advice.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don't care if it's your money—you shouldn't waste it.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This pattern is used to make counterfactual conditionals with respect to past events: if such-and-such had (or had not) been the case [but it was (or was not)], then... Thus, the second clause usually contains a supposition or expression of regret.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If I had left home a bit earlier, I would not have missed the train.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If I had rested a bit over the weekend, I wouldn't have gotten sick.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If he had been careful, he wouldn't have been so badly embarrassed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you had been more conscientious most of the time you wouldn't have been demoted.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you had been a bit more economical in spending your pocket money, you wouldn't have to be begging from others.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This pattern combines the retrospective marker -(으) did with the circumstantial ending in -(으) did, and is used to set up or preface the following clause with an appropriately relevant past event or fact directly experienced by the speaker.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clause</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>You were eating lunch just a little while ago [I recall] and you're already hungry again?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All the employees were making a lot of noise about the wages problem.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The company boss was incredibly angry. What happened?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That painting was quite expensive [as I recall] and you bought two of...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter Thirteen

them?

Vst-(으) 느름

granted that, even though it is—does [often followed by a rhetorical question]

This pattern signifies that the contents of the preceding clause cannot be constrained by the following clause. In other words, this ending is a concessive, which concedes or acknowledges the contents of the preceding clause; the conclusion reached in the following clause comes about regardless of the preceding clause. In many cases, the following clause is a rhetorical question, in which case the entire pattern is similar to the construction in '라고 할지라도, 어쩌고…'.

Examples:

- 같이 비난을 얼마나 비쳐겠어요?
  OK, so it's expensive — but just how expensive can it be?
- 기름이 없으니 난로가 있으면 무슨 소용이 있어요?
  We're out of oil, so even though we have a stove, what use is it?
- 그 분 고집이 세니 얘기만들 밥 해요?
  He's so stubborn, so what the point of talking to him?
- 누가 뭐라고 한을 자기 일관 잘하면 되지, 왜?
  People can say what they want — all that matters is that you do a good job.
- 실패하고 나서 후회만들 무슨 소용이 있겠어요?
  Suppose you swallow in regret after screwing up — what’s the use of that?

In combination with the copula ‘-이다’, this ending has the shape ‘- (으) 느름’ (where the ‘으’ is the copular stem, which drops optionally after a preceding vowel). In combination with the copula, this pattern gives the impression of a subject-less verb, but this is because the copula takes noun complements. Traditional Korean grammar treats the copula in ‘-이다’ as a special kind of particle, so this same traditional approach would analyze the examples below as cases of ‘Noun+Particle’ (‘명사+조사’).

Examples:

- doni 없으니 난물 어처겠어요?
  I don’t have any money, so what am I supposed to do? (Lit.: ‘Even though it be me, what shall I do?’)
- 그 사람들을 무슨 혐이 있겠어요?
  What sort of influence would he have? (Lit.: ‘Even though it be he, what power would he have?’
- 실력이 있으면 그런 일인데 못하게겠어요?
  If the sort of thing where all you need is a little talent, and you can’t even do that?
- 그렇게 좋은 환경에서 누군을 성공 못하게겠습니까?
  Who wouldn't succeed in a good environment like that?
- 부모님의 상을 담았으니 그 분 마음들 일이나 슬프겠어요?
  He has suffered the loss of his parents — how sad his heart must be!

Vst-(으) 느름

granted that, even if … (it had been known to happen that); if it had happened that…

This pattern signifies that if one looks back on some previously experienced event and imagines it to have been the opposite from what happened in reality, the actual results in the present would be different yet again. In other words, it creates a counterfactual conditional (or concessive) not unlike the pattern in ‘Vst-(으) 느름’ above.

Examples:

-그래 내가 있었던들 그런 일이 생기지 않았을 거야.
  If I had been there at the time, such a thing would never have happened.
- 자녀가 없었던들 내 인생이 얼마나 과로웠을까?
  If it were not for you, how painful my life would have been!
- 그날 그곳에 가지 않았던들 사고는 없었겠지.
  If I hadn't gone there that day, there wouldn't have been an accident.
- 내 나이가 조금만 더 젊었던들 도봉산을이나 올라갔겠지.
  If I had been just a bit younger, I could have climbed the likes of Mr. Tobong no problem.
If they had each yielded just one step, they wouldn't have had a fight.

\[ \text{Vst}-\text{旦지} \]

1) lit. the uncertain fact that it has been observed that i.e. whether it was (observed to be—happen)
2) any at all, regardless of which, ... (so) ever

This pattern combines the retrospective marker `\(-\text{-}4\)` with the indirect question pattern in `\(-\text{-}(\text{으})\text{-지}\)` and has two major usages depending on the nature of the following clause.

1 In one of its meanings this ending signifies that, in thinking back on a past experience, one has only a vague recollection and regards this recollection with some suspicion or insecurity.

**Examples:**

I don't know why I cried. (I have absolutely no idea where I was or what I was doing there at this time last year.)

Do you remember where he was at the time? (I was so eagerly awaiting a letter from back home that I forgot about everything I was doing.)

In its other major usage, this pattern combines with an interrogative `\(-\text{-}\)`-indefinite word like `어제, 어떻게, 얼마나` to render the meaning *any at all, regardless of which, ... (so) ever*. The implication is that the event in the first clause which one recalls is or was the reason for the contents of the following clause, and that the event(s) or contents of the preceding clause were quite impressive.

**Examples:**

It was so cold that I thought I would freeze to death.

It was so great I jumped up and down for joy.

I've had so much to drink that I completely out of it.

I was so tired yesterday that I simply collapsed into my bed.

I laughed so hard my stomach hurt.

\[ \text{Vst}-\text{도록} \]

(projective) to the point where, until (a result); (arranges—tries to do it) so that

This pattern is incompatible with `\(-\text{-있(있)이, 있)\)` or `\(-\text{-있\}}\`.

1 In one of its meanings, this ending expresses the extent or limit of an action.

**Examples:**

We stayed up all night last night studying. (*until the night dawned*)

I ate so much I felt like I was going to burst. (*to the point where my stomach would burst*)

Mr. Kim loved her to death.

They sang their hearts out. (*to the point where their throats were going to burst*)

The flowers did not bloom until (as late as) June. (*until it got to be June*)
In another of its meanings, this ending expresses the goal or direction in which one consciously promotes an action.

**Examples:**

1. The match was very close, but we pushed harder in the competition.
2. Coach Kim encouraged the athletes so that they might win this time in the competition.
3. She takes good care of the tree so that it will grow quickly.
4. The students should take care to have a traffic accident.
5. Please be sure to get up early tomorrow morning.
6. If you want to meet Mr. Kim, make sure you get over to the office.
7. I'll be careful to make sure this dish doesn't get broken.
8. From now on I will do my best to study diligently.

**Vst-되다**

(sees to it that •••; has (somebody) do it; makes sure (somebody does it); gets (somebody to do)

This pattern indicates an action performed in order to reach or attain some state or set of circumstances.

**Examples:**

1. It's OK to drink — just do so in moderation.
2. It's OK to go out — just come back by 2 PM.
3. The cost of living is quite high, but it's nothing I can't handle with my salary.
4. Even though she has a lot of money, she doesn't really pretend to be rich.
5. Apparently he sleeps, but not very deeply.
6. If you're hungry, see to it that you get something to eat.
7. He is a worker but he is not very rich.
8. From now on I will do my best to study diligently.
It's OK to extend the building — just start the contraction work from the spring.

It's OK to convene a meeting, but all the members have to attend.

\[ N-(이)로되 \]
(concessive) although (even though) it is; and indeed (does~ is);
(literary) and

\[ \text{This pattern attaches exclusively to nouns and noun phrases, and is used to acknowledge the fact(s) in the preceding clause, before attaching a condition in the following clause. In other words, this ending is the special form for use with the copula '-(이)다' (the expected '-이(는)되' is rarely used). The form in 'N-(이)로되' sounds more emphatic than just '-이(는)되' or 'Vst-되' to most Koreans.} \]

**Examples:**

이것은 한국에서 만든 것이로되 한국에서는 안 팔어요.
This was made in Korea — this isn't saleable in Korea.

네가 잘못한 일은 아니로되 사과를 하도록 하렴.
It's not your mistake, but why don't you make a point of apologizing.

I know it's not yours, but could you please lift it up for me?

\[ \text{In its other usage, this ending is used to indicate that the fact(s) in the following clause are not restricted by the contents of the preceding clause.} \]

**Examples:**

물은 물이로되 꽃도 피지 않았군요.
It's spring all right, but the flowers haven't even bloomed.

I won't care, whatever you do.

\[ \text{This pattern is used to express the idea of indifference to a choice, or else to enumerate a series of choices. It also occurs with the shape '-(든지)'.} \]

\[ \text{It is usually used in conjunction with an interrogative/indefinite word, or else in paired phrases of contrastive meaning of the type '-(든지) -(든지)'. In the latter case, the second member of the paired phrase can be the negated form of the first verb using '-(든지) -(든지) indicating a choice between the affirmative and negative form of one and the same verb.} \]

**Examples:**

네가 무엇을 하든지 난 상관하지 않겠어.
I won't care, whatever you do.

( Window Shopping) It certainly is a nice piece, all right, but our place is so small there's no place to put it.

\[ \text{Special Expressions using Conjunctival Endings 289} \]

\[ \text{This pattern is used to express the idea of indifference to a choice, or else to enumerate a series of choices. It also occurs with the shape '-(든지)'.} \]

\[ \text{It is usually used in conjunction with an interrogative/indefinite word, or else in paired phrases of contrastive meaning of the type '-(든지) -(든지)'. In the latter case, the second member of the paired phrase can be the negated form of the first verb using '-(든지) -(든지) indicating a choice between the affirmative and negative form of one and the same verb.} \]

**Examples:**

I won't care, whatever you do.

No matter who you meet, you should treat them kindly.

\[ \text{Whether you smoke or drink, just don't overdo it.} \]

\[ \text{Whether you smoke or drink, just don't overdo it.} \]

\[ \text{Note: The '-' of '-(든지)' can be optionally omitted.} \]

**Examples:**

I won't care, whatever you do.

No matter who you meet, you should treat them kindly.

\[ \text{Whether you smoke or drink, just don't overdo it.} \]

\[ \text{Whether you smoke or drink, just don't overdo it.} \]
I intend to do whatever my wife asks me to do.

What I'm saying is that whether a person has gone to college or not, you should evaluate them as a person.

I can leave with a clear conscience unless father tells me to go or something.

The doctor will tell you what to do—whether it be to take some medicine, get a shot, or whatever.

I can leave with a clear conscience unless father tells me to go or something.

The doctor will tell you what to do—whether it be to take some medicine, get a shot, or whatever.

Examples:

Since my health is not good, it looks like I'll have to take a leave of absence from school or the like.

If somebody asks your opinion, you have to reply that you think it is good or bad, one or the other.

I can leave with a clear conscience unless father tells me to go or something.

The doctor will tell you what to do—whether it be to take some medicine, get a shot, or whatever.

Examples:

The doctor will tell you what to do—whether it be to take some medicine, get a shot, or whatever.

Examples:

Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings

also appears as ‘-looking’ with no change in meaning. (*Its meaning is similar to the noun ‘looking’, but its usage is different. See page 38).

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:

Examples:
Whenever I would try to save up some money, some exceptional expense would crop up.

\( \text{Vst-(으)론든더리} \)
not only ... but (also); moreover; furthermore; as well as; besides, in addition, on top of that

This pattern is composed of \( \text{~~(으)론든더리} \) and expresses the idea that some fact or statement is not an exhaustive account, and that there is yet more, additional content. It is equivalent in function to the pattern in \( \text{~~(으)론든만 아니라} \). (see page 47).

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>그는 공부도 잘 할뿐더러 집안 일도 잘 봉부.</td>
<td>Not only is he a good student, he also helps a lot around the house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not only is he a good scholar; he is also a politician.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>요즘은 남매도 더할뿐더러 습기도 많지요.</td>
<td>Not only is it hot lately, but it is also very humid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not only is it hot lately, but it is also very humid.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>돈을 벌기도 여러뿐더러 쓰기도 힘들어요.</td>
<td>Money is not just hard to earn; it’s hard to spend, too.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 책은 내용도 충실한뿐더러 문장도 아름답습니다.</td>
<td>Besides having reliable contents, that book’s style is also beautiful.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{Vst-(으)론수록} \)
increasingly with (being ~ doing); the more (better, bigger, etc.) ... the more

\( \text{This pattern expresses an ongoing increase in the nature of an action or state.} \)

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한국말은 공부할수록 재미있습니까?</td>
<td>The more I study Korean the more interesting it is.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>바쁜수록 운전을 조심해야 합니다.</td>
<td>The busier you are the more careful you have to be driving.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\( \text{Vst-(으)근지라도} \)
even though, although, notwithstanding that ... regardless of

This ending is used in a pattern which signifies that even if one concedes hypothetically the action or state in the preceding clause, one is nevertheless constrained to carry out the action in the following clause.

**Examples:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>낯 음기가 좋지 않음지라도 떠나겠소.</td>
<td>I intend to leave even if the weather should be bad.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>친척 사이라 할지라도 공과 사는 구별할 줄 알아야 해요.</td>
<td>Kinship is one thing but you must distinguish between public and private.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>어난을 맞음지라도, 할 말은 해야지요.</td>
<td>You should say what is on your mind, even if it means catching a scolding.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Child though she may be, you should not ignore her. I don’t care how much of a hurry you are in, you shouldn’t speed.

_Vst(으)로 지연형_ even if

This ending usually connects two clauses of contradictory content, and indicates that if one had to make a choice between the two, one would, quite emphatically, prefer the first to the second.

**Examples**:

- `娘을 지연형 과속은 하지 않겠어요.`
  I don’t care if it means being late — I will not speed.

- `차라리 권력을 다름지연형 권세를 다투시 않겠습니다.`
  I would rather fight over rights and interests, than over power.

- `등남할지연형 그 사람 밑에서 일하시는 않겠어요.`
  I would rather beg than work under him.

- `물은 펴 용을 지연형 오늘은 잘 맡아야겠군요.`
  Even if it means starvation at some later date, I’m going to make a feast of it today.

- `죽을 펴 죽을지연형 수술은 밖겠어요.`
  Even if it means possible death. I’ll opt for the operation.

_Vst(으)로 지연대_ if, when (somewhat bookish, if not obsolete)

This ending acknowledges the facts in the preceding clause as something natural and to be expected, but also indicates that those facts are basis or condition for the contents of the following clause.

**Examples**:

- `나를 사랑하고 아탈지연대 이제 군복무를 마두겠어요?`
  Assuming one loves and cherishes one’s country, how could one refuse military service?

- `세계 평화를 열려할지연대 혼무기 생산을 해 안 막으리오.`
  If one is concerned about world peace, what reason is there not to stop the production of nuclear weapons?

- `지구의 안전을 걱정할지연대 환경 오염을 어제 방관했겠어요?`
  If we are worried about the future of the earth, how can we remain indifferent to environmental pollution?

- `ключа로 무서움을 알천대 왜 아프리카 난민을 모른다 하겠습니까?`
  You know the horrors of starvation, so how can you plead ignorance about the African refugees?

_Vst(으)라, Vst(으)라_ This pattern is used with action verbs to indicate that one does both this and that and the other simultaneously.

**Examples**:

- `노래하라, 춤추라 숨이 새 차겠네.`
  You must be quite out of breath with the singing and dancing.

- `악수하라, 인사하라 제 정신이 아니겠단다.`
  I was going nuts with all the handshaking and greetings.

- `이달에는 재산세 내라, 자동차세 내라 돈이 염청 들겠어요.`
  This month is going to cost us a fortune what with paying the property tax and the automobile tax.

- `아을 눈치 보라, 미느리 눈치 보라 신경이 많이 쓰이겠세요.`
  It must be quite nerve-wracking for you to have to be so careful about what you do and say around your son and your daughter-in-law.

- `예습하라, 독수하라 아르바이트 할 시간이 이미 있겠어요.`
  How are you supposed to have time to work part-time with all the preparation and review?

_AVst(으)하고_ (intentional) with the thought in mind to do, with the intention of doing, with the desire to do; ready—prepared—willing to do; about to do

This pattern expresses an intention to perform some action in the future; thus, it is compatible only with action verbs.
I'm attending the Korean Language Institute so as to learn Korean.

I bought a present intending to give [it] to my parents.

I got on the train with the intention of going to Pusan.

I opened the window so as to take in some fresh air.

I've been planning to go on a trip to Soraksan since over a month now.

In this pattern, the intensive ending in ` -(으)려고 하다` combines with the verb `하다` to express an intention, plan, or future agenda. Note that the ` -(으)려고` can be optionally omitted, yielding the shape `-(으)려 하다`.

Examples:

Once life gets a bit more comfortable, I intend to collect ceramics.

After we get off work, we intend to stop in at a bar for a beer.

I do not intend to associate with people who talk too much and shoot off at the mouth.

As soon as I get some money, I intend to take my friends out.

As soon as I get a leave, I intend to go hiking on Soraksan.

This pattern in ` -(으)려고 하다` can also combine with other common connective endings like conditional ` -(으)려면`, circumstantial ` -(으)는데`, sequential ` -(으)니까`, transferentive ` -(으)다가`, the retrospective modifier ` -(으)면`, etc.

Examples:

I'm on my way to the Ministry of Foreign Affairs to apply for a passport.

If you want to advance to the next grade, you have to study hard.

The plane that was supposed to depart at 5 PM arrived late because of engine trouble.

If you want to catch a thief, you have to move quicker than the thief.
If you want to build a house, be sure to make the foundation solid.

Vst-(으)러니
(thinking or presuming or supposing that) such would likely be the case

This pattern expresses a supposition of the speaker, and is usually uttered as a kind of soliloquy or monologue, i.e. by the speaker to the speaker him- or herself, as if saying to oneself ‘그러하겠거나’ that must surely be the case, such will probably be the case. However, this speaker-internal thought or supposition can also be quoted as a kind of indirect speech with the help of the verb ‘-하다’ to create a pattern which expresses the speaker’s supposition about the action or state of a second- or third person subject.

**Examples:**

나는 그가 나를 사랑해 주러니 하고 믿었어요.
I trusted him, thinking to myself ‘surely he loves me.’

여제는 그가 오러니 하고 기다렸습니다.
I waited for him yesterday, thinking he would surely come.

나는 그가 정치가러니 생각했어요.
I thought to myself that he must surely be a politician.

나는 그가 일을 못 하러니 생각했는데, 잘 해 냈습니 다.
I figured he wouldn’t be able to do it, but he did a good job.

나는 내가 먼저 사라하러니 생각하고 기다렸다.
I waited, assuming you would apologize first.

But note that when the subject is the speaker him-or herself, or when the sentence subject is also the agent of the action in the clause, this pattern has another interpretation — as an abbreviation of the pattern in ‘-고 하니’ via loss of ‘-고 하-‘. In this case, the pattern expresses an intention, and means now that I am going to (do), now that I want to (am ready — set — about to), or (just) when I was about to (do). In other words, one intended to do the action in the first clause, but this intention was somehow thwarted, and instead one is left with the result in the second clause. Of course, the verb in the preceding clause must be an action verb.

**Examples:**

남은 주러니 아깝고, 내가 먹으러니 맛이 없군요.
It was too nice to give away, but now that I try it myself, it tastes terrible.

여행을 하러니 돈이 없고, 집에 있으러니 심심했습니다.
I thought I might go on a trip, but have no money; and now that I’ve decided to stay at home, I’m bored.

혼자 하러니 할게요. 도움을 받으러니 자존심 상해.
I thought I would do it by myself, but it is too much for me; and yet now that I want to get some help, my pride is wounded.

발을 채워가면서 이 일을 끝내러니 저정으로 한층이나 나오네요.
I was going to stay up all night finishing this, but I just keep sighing!

이 무거운 짐을 혼자 다 옮기러니 힘겨울 줄이겠 듯 아프군요.
I was going to move these heavy bags myself, but now I have a splitting pain in my lower back.

Vst-(으)러니와

but; and anyway (what’s more), moreover; not only … but also; besides … also;

This pattern adds the contents of the preceding clause to those of the following clause, and regard some future or hypothetical event as ‘그러하겠습니 다, 물론이요’, i.e. it is a matter of course, it is entirely to be expected. If the subject is first person (I, we), and the verb is an action verb, this pattern also expresses the will or intention of the subject.

**Examples:**

앞으로는 그 분을 만나지도 남으러니와 만나 필요도 없습니다.
In future, I have no intention of meeting him [again], and what’s more, I have no need to do so.

유럽에 가면 독일에도 들러러니와 영국에도 가겠어요.
If we go to Europe, we will be sure to stop off in Germany, and of course
we'll also go to England.
그 여자는 마음씨도 고우리나와 부지런하기도 합니다.
Not only does she have a lovely disposition, she is also hardworking.
Now that 갑자도 좋은리나와 남씨도 아주 좋군요.
Not only am I in a fine mood today, but the weather is also very good.
동해물 시장은 물건도 많으리나와 값도 됩니다.
Tongdaemun Market has many wares and cheap prices.
Vst-기도 하러니와
not only [is A the case] … but also [B]; besides [A being the case] …
This pattern is used to express two or more actions or states about one and the same object.

Examples:
그는 특특하기도 하러니� 노력도 대단합니다
Besides being smart, she is also an incredibly hard worker.
길바는 맛이 있기도 하러니나 맛있다고 높이요.
Besides being good to eat, kalbi is also high in nutritional value.
필요한 랜 도와 주기도 하러니와 중요한도 함지야.
In times of need, she will both help you and give you advice.
성격이 좋기도 하러니나 이해심이 많습니다.
Besides having a nice personality, he is also full of understanding.
체력이 크기로 하러니와 건강하기도 해.
He has a large physique and is also healthy.

N도 N-(이)보다
yes, it is true that N is important, but [also] …; N is one thing, but let us not forget…

This pattern is used to acknowledge that the preceding noun is also an important element in what one wishes to say, and belongs right at the heart of one future plans or of what one is about to say, but that one must also include or incorporate the contents of the following clause into the overall picture.

Examples:
돈도 돈이라는 시간이 문제에요.
Money is also a big, but the big problem is time.
식사도 식사라는 육류부르고 싶은데요.
Eating would be nice, too, but I like to bathe first.
그 분의 말도 말이리나와 행동에도 문제가 있습니다.
What he says is a problem, too, but what’s his behaviour that’s the problem.
그 분도 문제가 주위 환경도 문제가입니다.
She’s also a problem, but the big problem is the surrounding environment.
시간도 시간이라는 성의가 없습니다.
Time is a problem, too, but what she is really lacking is sincerity.

Vst-(으)려는
I had hoped that … but; it should have … but; I wish that … but; I would presume that … but [contrary to my presumption] …; the expectation is~ was that …, but [contrary to that expectation] …

This pattern combines the intensive-suppositional ending in ‘~-(으)려’ with the ending in ‘-(으)려는’ which indicates a contrary or opposite result. Thus, when the subject is first person, this pattern expresses an intention, and when the subject is third person, it indicates a supposition. Whereas the preceding clause indicates a hypothetical expression about some future event, the following clause expresses the actual state of affairs, one which falls short of the expectations expressed in the preceding clause. Note that ‘-(으)려는’ can be shortened to ‘-(으)려’.

Examples:
별여보는 아니려는 연을 못할까?
I would presume he is not a deaf-mute, so why doesn’t he say anything?
문별리는 있어보인지는 일을 그르치고 말았다.
I would have expected him to have some judgement, but he screwed everything up.
여유만 있으면, 수제민을 도울 수 있으면만……
If only we had some extra resources, we would be able to help the flood
victims, [but we don't, so we can't].

If I could be born again I would live without regrets, but life just doesn't work that way, does it?

She ought to be able to do [at least] simple tasks, but she obviously has no intention of doing anything!

\[ Vst\-(으)면 \]
if, provided; when, whenever

This conditional ending sets forth the prerequisite conditions for the coming about of the action or state in the following clause. It can attach to all verbs, but in the case of the copula ‘-이다’ and its negative counterpart, ‘-아니다’, it usually attaches as ‘-(으)라면’.

**Examples :**
가을이 왔면 단풍이 드립니다.
In the autumn, the colors change. [Lit. : When it gets to be autumn...]

If you have any money, could you please lend me some?

Whenever it looks like rain, I take an umbrella when I go out.

When you catch a cold, you should rest at home.

수입품이면 값이 무척 비쌀 걸라요.
If it's an import, it'll be really expensive.

Followed by the verbs ‘좋다’ or ‘하다’, this ending creates a pattern expressing the wish, hope or desire of the sentence subject. Addition of the past tense marker in ‘-(으)면’ makes the wish more emphatic.

**Examples :**
내일은 나가지 말고 집에 있으면 좋겠어요.
Tomorrow I like to stay home instead of going out.

Wouldn’t it be great to be able to hang out with your friends when you’re bored?

Wouldn’t it be great to be able to hang out with your friends when you’re bored?

There are many people who wish Korea would be unified.

The citizens of the country wish that the government would practice good politics.

What would you like to do in future?

\[ Vst\-(으)면아 \]
if only one ...; if one would just ...; only if one (does—is)

This pattern adds the emphatic particle ‘-아’ to the conditional ending ‘-(으)면’, and expresses the idea that when the fact(s) of the preceding clause are given as a hypothetical situation or condition, one naturally derives the result(s) in the following clause.

**Examples :**
안개가 겨 남이면야 비행기가 떠나기 힘들조.
It is especially difficult for airplanes to take off on foggy days.

식사를 했으면야 배가 고피리가 없조.
Of course she won't be hungry if she's already eaten.

안락을 하면야 오겠조.
Sure she'll come, if you just get in touch with her.

그 분이 사과를 한마디면야 나도 묶이 기분 나빠할 필요가 없조.
Of course, if he says he'll apologize, there is no need for me to be offended.

\[ Vst\-(으)면서 \]
while ... at the same time;
while ... yet; although ... also; at the very same time that

This pattern indicates that two actions or states occur at the same time. The subject of both clauses must be the same.
Examples:

We had an interesting conversation while eating.
The child cried while bawling in a loud voice.
We all sang as we went up the mountain.

Mrs. Kim greeted us with a smile.
I spent the whole day lazing around the house.

This pattern is used to emphasize that the contents of the preceding and following clause are contradictory or conflicting. This same pertains even if one drops ‘-도’.

Examples:

Even though they like one another, they never show it.
Apparentely he refused to look at her, even though they were among friends.

Apparently she had no idea what he was saying, inspite of the fact that she was listening.

These clothes are light, yet warm.

Note: when used after a noun, we treat this (i.e. ‘-(으)며’) as a
particle. (See page 161).

Vst-(으)므로
with—as—by the doing or being; since (because of) the doing or being

This pattern expresses a reason or cause, and is usually followed by a verb with a declarative final ending.

Examples:

This item attracts tax because it is an import.

Because today is Saturday, we only work in the morning.

Because it's none of my business, I didn't ask.

Since this isn't my money, I have to find the owner and give it back.

Vst-(으)로
with—as—by the doing or being; since (because of) the doing or being

This pattern is based on the nominalizer form in ‘-(으)로’ plus the instrumental particle ‘-(으)로’, and indicates that the preceding clause is the reason for or cause of the following clause. That is, it indicates that the contents of the following clause are due to or have their origin in the contents of the first clause. Note that this pattern can be followed optionally by ‘-(으)로’ with no change in meaning.

Examples:

One increases one's knowledge through reading books.

We can prove facts by conducting scientific experiments.

Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings

n조심해 조심을 함으로써 사전에 사고를 예방하죠.
One prevents accidents before they even happen through constantly exercising caution upon caution.

They say you can be victorious in the end through patience and perseverance.

I maintain my health most of the time through jogging.

Vst-여(아, 여)

though (although, even though) does—is; notwithstanding (the fact that); but, however; all it takes is … (for it to happen)

This connective ending signifies either supposition or concession.

In one of its usages, this ending is followed by ‘ 좋다’, ‘괜찮다’, or ‘되다’ to create a pattern which seeks permission for the contents of the preceding clause or else ask the interlocutor’s intentions.

Examples:

You can go home now.

It's OK to eat this food.

If you want to go to Seoul Station, you can take this bus.

Is it OK if the clothes are a bit big?

In another usage, this ending concedes the contents of the preceding clause, but indicates that these have no relation to the following clause. In this case, the preceding verb can be prefaced by the adverb ‘아무리’ however (much); no matter (how) to make the concessive meaning clearer.
Examples:
We're going on a picnic tomorrow even if it rains.
Even though she's short, she is good at sports.
Even though I'm hungry I can't eat it all by myself.

When used in an interrogative pattern, the ending in ‘-어(아, 여) 도’ seeks the interlocutor's permission; in this case, a negative response is given with ‘-어요’.

Examples:
Is it OK if I get up late tomorrow morning?
No, you mustn't get up late
Is it OK if it rains when we go on our picnic?
No, if it rains we're not going.
Is it OK if my exam results are bad?
No, it won't do if your exam results are bad.

Vst-어(아, 여)서
and so; and then; (attached to a action verb) so as to, (goes) for~to

This ending indicates that the preceding clause is the reason or cause for the following clause. Note that it is not compatible with the past tense marker in ‘-았(었), 었’ or with the future marker in ‘-겠’.

and that the final ending in the following clause cannot be either an imperative or propositive form.

Examples:
I'm busy, so I won't be able to participate in the meeting.
The child is crying because its stomach hurts.
Since I am not a poet, I do not know much about such things.
The wind was blowing so fiercely that the leaves all fell off.

In another usages, this ending signifies that the action in the preceding clause happened prior to, and in turn with, the action in the following clause. Moreover, the two actions are logically sequenced and or connected. In cases such as these, the verb in the preceding clause is an action verb, and there are no restrictions on the type of final ending in the following clause.

Examples:
We go to the market and buy various kinds of things.
Cholsu bought a book and gave it to his brother.
Yesterday I met Mr. Kim and we had an interesting conversation.

Vst-어(아, 여)야
only to the extent that ... can~does one (...); if you don't ... you
can't (⋯); it is by ...ing that you (⋯); you have to ... in order to (⋯); only when— if you ⋯ do you (⋯)

1 In its first usage, this pattern indicates that the contents of the preceding clause are an absolute prerequisite to the contents of the following clause. It can attach to any type of verb, but note that the copula and its negative counterpart take the special shapes ‘-{이)라야’ and ‘아니라야’, respectively.

Examples:
- You have to meet Mr. Kim if you want to hear news from back home.
- The weather in the autumn has to be good for the rice to mature properly.
- If your beard is three feet long, you have to eat to live.
- I won't feel relieved until I meet him in person.
- Only a person of great learning can solve that problem.

Note: one can make the pattern in ‘-어(아, 여)야’ more emphatic by adding ‘만’.

Examples:
- 비행기나 배를 타야만 체주도에 갈 수 있어요.
- The only way to get to Cheju Island is by airplane or by boat.
- 학교에 다니야만 교양이 될 수 있는 건 아니지요.
- Of course, it is not the case that the only way to become an educated person is to go to school.
- 돈이 있어야만 행세를 하는 세상이니, 오⋯.
- We live in a world where the only way to distinguish oneself is to have money.
- 산에 가야만 호랑이를 잡을 수 있다고요?
- You say you have to go into the mountains if you want to catch a tiger?

2 When this pattern is followed by a negative, it signifies that there is no point in doing something; even if one does something, it is of no use.

Examples:
- It's too late, so if you go now you won't be able to meet Mr. Kim.
- Run around all you like—it's too late now.
- There's no use emptying out my pockets—all I have is small change.
- There's no use making excuses—you'll only invite misunderstanding.

-어(아, 여)야 하다
- one must—should—has got to do
- This pattern adds a heightened sense of obligation to the meaning of the preceding verb.

Examples:
- 학생은 열심히 공부해야 한다.
- Students should study hard.
- 네도 이 약을 먹어야 한다.
- You have to take this medicine, too.
- 외국에 가려면 여건을 받아야 합니다.
- If you want to go abroad, you have to get a passport.
- People should have good hearts.

Vst-자
as soon as, when; and at once, instantly; when = as a result (of), whereupon; no sooner had one done it, than:

This ending indicates that the action in the second clause follows immediately upon that of the preceding clause. This pattern also occurs with the shape ‘~~자마자~~’.

**Examples:**

부상에 도착하자마자 친구에게 전화하였습니다.
I’ll call my friend as soon as we arrive in Pusan.

배가 고파서 집에 오자마자 저녁을 먹었습니다.
I was hungry, so I ate supper as soon as I got home.

그 자수가 무대에 나타나자 청중들이 박수를 칭찬합니다.
As soon as the singer appeared on the stage, the audience applauded.

아마귀 날자 때 떨어진다.
As soon as the crow takes wing, a pear falls (proverb for ‘coincidence’).

네가 집을 사자 집 값이 오른 거예요.
No sooner had I bought the house than house prices went up.

**N-자자는**
is at one and the same time, is and (simultaneously)

This pattern is essentially the pattern immediately above used with the copula ‘~~이다~~’, and signifies that the preceding and following noun share the same qualities.

**Examples:**

이 사업은 나라의 이익이자 또 자신의 이익이 되는 거예요.
This project is both in the interests of the nation and in your own interest, too.

졸업은 끝이자 시작이란 개념을 갖고 있습니다.
‘Graduation’ entails the notions of beginning and end.

가장이나 인식이자 보급가치입니다.
The family is both a place of refuge and a nest.

그 문은 제 소중이자 어빠가 같은 분임니다.
For me, he is at once a teacher and like a parent.

Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings 313

Vst-자자

now that one intends to (do) … (one finds); now that I am about to (do) … (I realize); when one contemplates (doing) … (one discovers)

This pattern is an abbreviation from ‘~~교자 하니~~’, and indicates that just as one had the intention to or was about to do the action in the preceding clause, the contents of the following clause in some way modify or constrain that action. The verb of the preceding clause must be an action verb.

**Examples:**

가자니 물이 아프고, 여간에 꼬자니 돈이 없습니다.
I would go, but I don’t feel well, and I would stay in an inn, but I have no money.

꼭자니 창춘이요, 살자니 고생이예요.
I contemplate death, but am [still] in my youth; when I contemplate life, it is [nothing but] suffering.

부부하자는ulg고, 눌자니 마음이 높이지 않아요.
When I contemplate studying, I have no interest, and when I contemplate having a good time, I can’t relax.

부모님께 반환드리지만 야단 말 못할 것 같고, 그렇다고 안 할 수도 있군요.
When I consider telling my parents, I will probably get in trouble, but then again I might not.

남 주자니 아깝고, 내가 먹자니 밥자로군요.
It seems a shame to give it away, but it is too much for me to contemplate eating on my own.

Vst-았(었, 였)구나 설자

just as one thinks to oneself ‘say’…; just when one realizes that…

This pattern indicates that just when one experiences some emotion about the preceding clause, the contents of the following clause come
about. The pattern in ‘-거나 실자’ can be used with the same meaning.

**Examples:**

겨게 죽었으나 실자 눈물이 났어요.
Just when I figured the dog was dead, I cried.

앞으로 만날 수도 없겠거나 실자 눈물이 알을 가리지 않겠어요?
Just as I came to the realization that we would probably never be able to meet again, I discovered tears blocking my vision.

말을 잘못 했구나 실자 그 다음 말이 생각나지 않았어요.
Just as I thought to myself I had misspoken, I couldn’t think of what to say.

아무도 없이 혼자구나 실자 감자기 쓸쓸해졌어요.
When I finally realized I was completely alone, I suddenly felt lonely.

대 차례구나 실자 맘 멀리거리군요.
When I realized it was my turn, I started shaking like crazy.

This pattern combine the exploratory pattern in ‘-어(아, 여) 보았자’ with ‘-자’ and signifies that however much one might attempt the contents of the preceding clause, the results will not be up to expectation.

**Examples:**

이 라면 한 그릇 밥이 보았자 간에 기별도 안 갓걸어요.
Even if you do eat a bowl of this ramyon, your stomach will hardly notice.

그 사람하고 상대해 보았자 밀친도 진지지 못해요.
If you do business with him, you won’t even get your original investment back.

여약해 보았자 들어 좀 사람도 아닌데 뭐.
Go ahead and ask her to do it — but she’s not the type to oblige.

우려를 해봐 보았자, 자동차도 없는데 즐게 없죠, 뭐.
Even if I learn to drive, what’s the use? I don’t even have a car...

예답 용돈 얼마 받아 보았자, 버스 타고 차 및 만 자시면 다 없어 지요.

Even if you get an allowance every month, as soon as you take the bus a few times and have a few cups of coffee, it’s all gone.

Vst-어(아, 여) 보았자

even if one supposes (hypothetically) that one tries—tried to do; don’t bother —ing; don’t waste your time...  

This pattern signifies that even if, hypothetically, one supposes or grants that the contents of the preceding clause will have a certain result, the negative or contrary result in the following clause will come about. This pattern differs from the pattern above in ‘-어(아, 여) 보았자’ in that it is even more hypothetical.

**Examples:**

월급을 인상해 달라고 비아이 보았자 소용없어요.
Even supposing you did insist on getting a raise, it wouldn’t be any use.

그 문제에 대해 반대해 보았자 들지도 않을 거예요.
Even supposing you do oppose on that issue, she won’t even listen to you.

그 사람에게 충고해 왔자 입만 아가요.
Don’t waste your time giving him any advice — you’ll only get a sore mouth.

취어 보았자, 그 사람을 따라갈 수는 없어.
Don’t bother running after him — you won’t be able to keep up.

아무리 머리를 쳐 밥였자, 좋은 생각이 나올 것 같지 않군.
Let’s not waste our brains on this one — looks like we’re not going to have any good ideas!

Vst-지

(reverse) is—does and + (SEMANTIC) NEGATIVE

This pattern is used when one confirms or strenuously approves of the contents of the preceding clause, but at the same time negates or refutes the contents of the following clause, and wishes to juxtapose and highlight these two opposing facts. The following clause often contains a rhetorical question for added emphasis.

**Examples:**

이것을 인상해 달라고 비아이 보았자, 소용없어요.  
Even supposing you did insist on getting a raise, it wouldn’t be any use.

그 문제에 대해 반대해 보았자 들지도 않을 거예요.  
Even supposing you do oppose on that issue, she won’t even listen to you.

그 사람에게 충고해 왔자 입만 아가요.  
Don’t waste your time giving him any advice — you’ll only get a sore mouth.

취어 보았자, 그 사람을 따라갈 수는 없어.  
Don’t bother running after him — you won’t be able to keep up.

아무리 머리를 쳐 밥였자, 좋은 생각이 나올 것 같지 않군.  
Let’s not waste our brains on this one — looks like we’re not going to have any good ideas!

Vst-지

(reverse) is—does and + (SEMANTIC) NEGATIVE

This pattern is used when one confirms or strenuously approves of the contents of the preceding clause, but at the same time negates or refutes the contents of the following clause, and wishes to juxtapose and highlight these two opposing facts. The following clause often contains a rhetorical question for added emphasis.

**Examples:**
You're you — not me!

You sow black beans and you reap black beans — why would you get red beans? (Proverb: 'You reap what you sow?')

Surely that is enough — what more could you wish for?

He just talks a good talk but he can't put it into practice.

3. Adnominal Endings (관형사형 어미)

Adnominal endings attach to verb stems and convert these into a new part-of-speech — adnominals. Adnominals modify nouns. Another function of adnominal endings is to express tense and aspect meanings; these functions and meanings differ slightly depending on the type of verb base.

**AVst-는**

processive modifier

This modifier attaches exclusively to action verbs, and indicates that the action is continuous, ongoing or in progress.

**Examples:**
저기 가는 데 이 산책입니다.  
That person walking over there is Mr. Lee.  
그 잔은 어느 비오는 날에 입어났습니다.  
It happened one rainy day.  
이 책을 읽으신 것이 있습니다.  
This book is selling quite a lot of copies recently.  
한국말을 배우는 사람이 늘어났습니다.  
The number of people learning Korean is increasing.  
저기 보이는 산이 남산입니다.  
That mountain you can see over there is Namsan.

**Vst-(으)ㄴ**

past — adjectival modifier

This modifier has different meanings depending on the type of verb it attaches to. Attached to an action verb, it expresses prior completion of the action, and attached to a descriptive verb or to the copula ‘-이다’ it expresses a current state or fact.

**Examples:**
경찰이 틀은 물건을 찾아 주었습니다.  
The policeman found the item we had lost for us.  
어제 읽은 편지를 우체국에 가지고 놓았어요.  
I went to the Post Office and mailed the letter I wrote yesterday.  
그 빛은 마음이 좋은 사람입니다.  
She is a person with a good heart.  
겨울이 되면 천 년이 내립니다.  
When winter comes, white snow falls.  
이 사람도 내 친구인 김 형수입니다.  
This person is also my friend Kim Hyeong-woo.
This is Mr. Kim who is my friend.

Vst-(으)ㄹ
future-prospective modifier

This modifier expresses an action or state which has not yet been realized.

Examples:
비가 오니가 쓰고 값 우산을 준비해야 합니다.
It's raining, so we have to get together some umbrellas [to take with us].
그 사람을 잃을 못도 빛을 것도 없네요.
She has no clothes to wear and nothing to eat.
이번 주말에 여행 갈 계획을 세우고 있습니다.
I'm putting together a plan to go on a trip this weekend.
여미님 말씀이 조금도 틀릴 것이 없어요.
There is nothing ['bound to be'] wrong in what mother says.
지난에 빛을 무식을 준비하겠어요.
I'll prepare the food we're going to eat for supper.

Vst-던
retrospective modifier

This modifier expresses recollection of a state in the past, or of a repeated, habitual or uncompleted action in the past.

Examples:
큰 소리로 울린 아이가 잔자기 웃음을 그쳤습니다.
The child who was crying so loudly suddenly stopped crying.
어찌해 졸린 사람이 이제 이사했습니다.
The person who used to live here moved yesterday.
아랫에 부터나 바닷가 노랫 Aynı 단풍이 들_neighbor.
The leaves which were so green in the summer have turned to their autumn yellow.
이 음악은 내가 자주 듣던 것입니다.
This music is something I used to listen to often.
어찌 내가 마시던 커피 누가 가져 갖나요?

Who took the coffee I was [just] drinking here?

2 When this modifier attaches to the past tense marker in ‘-있(있어, 였어)’, it gives clearer expression to the notion of 'completeness' and also expresses experience.

Examples:
어제 만난 사람을 오늘 또 만났어요.
Today I met again the person I [had] met yesterday.
며칠 전에 갔던 집인데 도무지 찾을 수가 없어요.
I went there just a few days ago, but I just can't seem to find the place.
코가 비통이지도록 숨을 마셨던 적이 없어요.
There have been times when I drank myself silly ['to the point where my nose got crooked'].
summative ‘-기’ is much more versatile than the substantive ‘-(으)로’.
Depending on its relationship to the verb which follows it, the ‘-기’-form can attach various particles and play the role of subject, object or adverbial in a larger clause; it can also combine with yet other elements and convert to some other ending or else be deployed as an adnominal expression.

Vst-기

Examples:
외국에서 살기 제미있을 것 같다.
It seems like living abroad would be fun.

Vst-기 (가) 입다
In this pattern, ‘-기 (가)’ is followed by the descriptive verb ‘مقا’ easy; likely to, and the overall structure expresses a probability or likelihood: ‘아마 그런 것이다’ will probably—likely be the case. Note that ‘-기’ can attach to the past tense marker ‘있었, 있’ in this structure, too.

Examples:
아무 연애를 하지 않았기 입니다.
I hope your cold gets better soon.

Vst-기 하는
In this pattern, ‘-기 (가)’ is followed by the auxiliary particle ‘-는’ with its contrastive meaning, and followed by the verb ‘하다’ to create the structure ‘-가는’ 하고, ‘-는은 Vst-기 하나’ Alternately, the same verb can be repeated: ‘Vst-기하는 Vst-기 하나’. The function of this pattern is to acknowledge (sometimes grudgingly) or concede the contents of the preceding clause.

Examples:
그 분을 만나가는 하겠습니다.
I’ll meet him [at least; though I may not do anything else with him].
As for coming to Korea, I came here 15 years ago, but I still don't know Korean.

The quality is OK, but it's too expensive.

True, I worked hard, but I have no results to show for it.

OK, I'll eat it, but I don't know if I'll be able to digest it.

Vst-기어는 커녕
far from doing—being (on the contrary)

This pattern attaches ‘-커녕’ to the ‘-기’-form, and functions to negate, emphatically, the contents of the preceding clause so as to lend prominence to the following clause.

Examples :
주말에 싸울 기어는 커녕 밥 먹을 땐도 없이 일 있어서요.
I worked so hard over the weekend, I didn't have a spare moment to eat, let alone rest.

돈을 벌기는 커녕 없는 돈까지 다 써 버렸어요.
Far from earning money, I even spent all the money I had with me.

날씨가 좋기는 커녕 천둥까지 쳐어요.
The weather was far from nice—it even thundered.

명이 낫기는 커녕 더 심해졌어요.
Far from getting better, his ailment got worse.

그 남자를 좋아하기는 커녕 만나 주지도 않는다고.
Like him? Are you kidding—they say she won't even meet him.

Vst-기어는 (∵)
What do you mean, ‘…’? Surely you can’t be serious when you say ‘…’?!

In this pattern, the form in -기어는 (∵) functions as a final ending, and is used to express humility in response to a compliment or praise from one interlocutor. More generally, it is used when one is unable to share or concur with the opinion of one interlocutor. The final (∵) is used for politeness.

Examples :
기억력이 좋은 신데요?
I have a good memory!

아니다. 저도 자주 잊어 버리네요.
Not really. I forget things frequently, too.

사장 물건이 싫어요?
I don't like it?

싸다. 백화점 물건값과 비슷해요.
Things at the market are cheap, aren’t they?

아니다. 그건 물건값과 비슷하다.
They’re almost the same as department store prices.

그 사람 무지막히 일하죠?
He works quite hard, doesn’t he?

상사가 말한 거면 아니다.
That’s what she said, isn’t it?

일하긴 냅니다. 일자리가 없기만 하고 있네요.
She works quite hard, doesn’t she?

어째서 아시죠?
Are you kidding? All she did was talk with the person beside her.

실생은 먹으셨습니까?
Did you eat?

어째서 아시죠?
Are you kidding? He's just barely getting ready now.

절심을 든셨어요?
Are you kidding?

먹기어요. 아직 30분은 기다려야 해요.
Like him? Are you kidding—she says she won't even meet him.

Vst-기도
does—is indeed (really); sort of does (but then again, doesn’t); does—is also [with negative; does—is not either]; really is—does (intensive); does—is both A and B; sometimes is ~ does and sometimes not

This pattern combines ‘Vst-기’ with the particle ‘-도’ in its meaning of ‘여서’ sure enough; indeed; and also; even, followed by ‘하다’.

Examples :
그 물건은 비싸기도 하지만 귀하기도 해.
That item is expensive, but it is also rare.

He earns lots of money, and he also spends lots.

That film makes people [both] cry and laugh.

Some of our cookies we make ourselves, and others we buy.

This pattern combines 'Vst-기' with the auxiliary particle '만' in its meaning of only, solely, exclusively, followed by '하다'.

Examples:
- 그 문은 난 보기만 하면 꽤나 고춧가야요.
- As soon as she sees me, she pester me to go the cinema. Or: No sooner does she see me, than…

Vst-기에

For "in" by "from doing, to do; as, because; as, in accordance with; such that, so that (followed by a question doubting the adequacy of the reason)"

This pattern combines 'Vst-기' with the adverbial particle '에' to create an adverbial phrase which expresses either the standard or basis for judgement of the following clause, or presents the reason or cause for the following clause. In the latter case, the combination '기에' behaves like a single, composite ending, and can be replaced with the shape '기레' with no change in meaning. (see page 328).

Examples:
- 일이 하기에 바빠, 누가 들어 오는지도 몰랐어요.
- [Being] busy at work, I had no idea somebody was entering the room.
- 이제 결혼하기에는 어른 나이이다.
- She is still at an age when it is too young to get married.
- 혼자 막기에는 너무 많군요.
- It's too much for me to eat all by myself!
- 친구가 알고 있기 때문에 방문한을 갔다 왔어요.
- As my friend is sick, I went to pay a sick call to him.
- 친구가 취직을 하고 싶어하기에 아이나 주었지요.
- As my friend wants to find work, I did some seeking around for her.
- Vst-기에는따라가에

because they say that… because one hears or is given to understand that…

This pattern is originally a combination of the indirect speech pattern in '는다고 하-' plus the summative nominalizer '기', via deletion of the '고 하-'.

Examples:
- 좋은 사람이기에 만나 보았을 뿐입니다.
- All I did was meet her because I had heard she was a good person.
- 그 친구가 내일 여행을 떠나자기에 그리기로 약속했습니다.
- Seeing as my friend was suggesting we go on a trip tomorrow, I agreed to do so.
- 이사 간다기에 도우러 왔습니다.
- I heard that you are moving, and so came over to help.
- 한국에 왔다고 가자기에 공부하러 왔다고 했습니다.
- When he asked me why I had come to Korea, I answered that I had come
to study.

At his insistence, I invested in business, and the results were not bad!

Vst-기로
decides to do, makes up one's mind to do; arranges to do; fixes
arranges it so that; promises-agrees to do

This pattern combines 'Vst-기' with the adverbial particle '-(으)로' followed by a verb like '하다' decide, '정하다' decide, determine, fix[upon], settle on, '착정하다' decide, determine, intend to, '결심하다' resolve to, make up one's mind to, '마음박다' make up one's mind to, determine to, etc., to indicate a course of action chosen by the subject.

Examples:
선혼 여행을 제주도로 가기로 했습니다.
We've arranged to go to Cheju Island for our honeymoon.

남의 홍은 보지 않기로 마음 박었습니다.
I've resolved not to criticize others.

술 담배는 꿈기로 결심했습니다.
I've made up my mind to quit smoking and drinking.

오늘부터 규칙적인 생활을 하기로 작정했습니다.
I've decided to live an orderly life from today on.

늘 성실하게 살기로 결심했습니다.
I have made up my mind to always live sincerely.

Vst-기한
that is (called) ...; as for (the one that is called) ...

This pattern sets up the theme or topic to be commented on the following clause, and is a sort of glorified equivalent of the topic marker '-은/-는'. In origin, this pattern is an abbreviation of '-기+-이/-가'라고 하는 것은'.

Examples:
새로운 일을 시작하기란 여간 어렵지 않았어요.
Starting a new project is by no means easy.
others about them.

**Vst-걸래**

with the fact of doing; as, since, because

This pattern is used to signify that the contents of the preceding clause are the reason or grounds for the following clause. The subject of the following clause is usually first person. This pattern is interchangeable with ‘기’ (see page 324).

**Examples:**

Since there was no money in his pocket, I put some in.

Seeing as he asked for my address, I gave it to him.

As my leg hurt, I took a rest on the way up.

This letter was sitting on the desk, so I opened it.

**Vst-기로서니**

even though indeed, it is true indeed that … but ; even though—if, even given—admitted that, it is true that … but; however much A might be the case, B …

This pattern is used to indicate that while one understands the facts or situation explained in the preceding clause, there is still a part that one cannot fully comprehend and wishes to make more concrete in the following clause. Note that this pattern can function in the same meaning with just ‘기’.

**Examples:**

A tree standing alone is lonesome beyond compare.

Life in an alien land is unbelievably lonely.

The human mind is extraordinarily deceitful.

The sound of the monk clapper from the temple is incredibly melancholy.

However much you may like him, you probably don’t like him as much as I do. (Or: …you probably don’t like him as much as you like me.)

No matter how busy you’re, are you telling me that you don’t have time to write a letter.

I don’t care how lousy a mood you’re in — since when do go hitting me?

**The Structure in ‘Vst-기 N(이/가) 없다’**

This pattern is mostly used to express the severity or magnitude of a descriptive verb. The exact meaning of individual sub-patterns varies depending on the noun used in the ‘N’ position.

**Vst-기 크게한다**

is extraordinarily—extremely…

**Examples:**

A tree standing alone is lonesome beyond compare.

Life in an alien land is unbelievably lonely.

The human mind is extraordinarily deceitful.

The sound of the monk clapper from the temple is incredibly melancholy.
Examples:

His way of thinking is incredibly confined and stuffy.

I'm so desperately embarrassed that things didn't work out all because of me.

He is an incredibly dry person.

I'm absolutely furious that I wasn't able to say what I had to say.

That alley is filthy beyond belief.

Vst-기 한이 없다

In this emphatic pattern, '한' is the Sino-Korean word meaning limit, limitation. Thus, the literal meaning of the pattern is has a certain quality in unlimited quantity.

Examples:

I am overjoyed to see my son again.

They say that book is astoundingly difficult.

If you ask him to keep an eye on the house, more often than not he falls asleep.

For lunch I mostly end up eating cold rice.

Vst-기 마련이다

can't help doing — being; inevitably does — is; does as a natural matter of course

This pattern can be paraphrased as ‘그렇게 하는 것이 당연하다’ doing such-and-such is to be expected — is a matter of course. This pattern can also be used with the shape ‘-게 마련이다’, and is mainly used to discuss results which come about due to natural forces, as opposed to artificial forces or human agency.

Examples:

All humans are destined to die.

If you commit a bad deed, you are bound to be punished.

When autumn comes, it is time for the trees to change colors.
Laziness begets poverty.
자주 만나면 사이가 가까워지게 마련입니다.
If you meet someone often enough, you are bound to grow closer.

Cases of Fossilized Nouns
In the following examples, a nominalized form in summative ‘-기’ has lost all its verbal qualities and has become fossilized as a derived noun— it functions like any other noun. Most cases of this type are built on action verbs, but there are exceptions.

Examples:
쓰기는 쉬운데 말하기는 어려운 편이지요.
Writing is easy, but speaking is rather difficult, of course.
김유신은 어렸을 때부터 말하기와 활쏘기를 배웠습니다.
Kim Yusin learned horseback riding and archery from an early age.
서유의 기술 중에는 돌이치기라는 것이 있어요.
Among the techniques of Korean wrestling there is something called the shoulder throw.
그 사람의 성공은 많은 사람들의 노력기여 되었습니다.
His success has become a model for many others.
이번 내기에 저서 정심을 사게 되었어요.
I lost the last bet so I have to buy lunch.

Proverbs and Other Conventionalized Expressions
There are many examples of proverbs and conventionalized expressions handed down from ancient times which are based on nominalized phrases in ‘-기’.

Examples:
 handwriting
[It’s] easy as pie. (It’s a piece of cake). [Lit.: It is a case of lying down and eating ricecake.]

별이 난다.
[It’s] like talking to a brick wall. [Lit.: It is a case of reciting sutras to a cow.]

Special Expressions using Conjugational Endings

Adnominal Usages
In another category of usage, ‘-기’ functions adnominally before nouns like ‘전’ before or ‘때문’ [be]cause, reason. Finally, in yet another structure, ‘-기’ attaches to a verb base in fron of ‘위해서’ for the sake of ...

Examples:

I lost the last bet so I have to buy lunch.

Vst-기 전에
before doing, before one does (did, will do)
This pattern indicates that the following action comes about before the preceding action.

Examples:

I have to finish [the work] before Mr. Kim comes.

We pray before meals.

The flowers bloom before the fruits ripen.

How long did you know each other before you got married?

I gave it a great deal of thought before saying anything.

Vst-기 때문에
because of doing ~ being, because it is ~ does
This pattern indicates that the following action comes about because
or due to the preceding action.

**Examples:**
- I better rest for a while because my head hurts.
- I don't feel like eating lunch because I ate too much at breakfast.
- He wasn't punished because he wasn't the perpetrator.

**Vst-기**

In order to, to the end that, so as to, so that, for the purpose of, with the intention of, with a view to

This pattern indicates that the following action is carried out with goal or purpose of achieving the preceding action.

**Examples:**
- I'm going to school in order to study.
- Do we live in order to eat, or do we eat in order to live?
- I'm learning English so as to go to the United States to study.
- I exercise every morning in order to get healthy.
- Let's have a beer together for a change of mood.

**2) Substantive Vst-(으)로**

Whereas the nominalizer ending in ‘-기’ expresses a generalized or expected fact based on some action or state, nominalized forms in ‘-(-으)로’ have somewhat different semantics: they indicate that an action has already been decided, fixed or concretized, and already exists at the present moment or scene. Like ‘-기’, the nominalizer in ‘-(-으)로’ can combine with various particles to play different roles in a sentence like, subject, object, or adverbial, but it is not used as much as ‘-기’, and in many cases serves as a substitute for or equivalent to ‘-(-으)장’ the [past or completed] fact that.

**Vst-(으)로**

the act-fact of doing—being; the process or result of doing

In this pattern, ‘Vst-(으)로’ combines with the subject particle ‘-이’ and functions as a subject; the following verb is typically an evaluative one like ‘渾명하다’ it is clear that, ‘당연하다’ it stands to reason that, ‘이상하다’ it is strange that, ‘맞다’ it is right that, ‘확실하다’ it is certain that, etc.

**Examples:**
- It's clear that he gone abroad.
- It stands to reason that criminals get punished.
- It is certain that he is not at home.
- So, it’s a fact then that he is still alive!
Despite having been admonished several times, that child lied again.

**Use of ‘-(으)자’ as a Sentence-Final Ending**

The ending in ‘-(으)자’ can also function as a sentence-final ending, in which case it has the meaning of broadcasting some message to many people. Martin calls this the ‘Documentary Style’.

**Examples:**

- 이곳에는 들어갈 수 없음. (공고문)
  No entry. [public announcement—poster]
- 그 사건을 사실이 아님을 공고함. (게시문)
  I hereby give public notice that the incident in question is a fabrication. [posted notice]
- 오늘은 할머니댁에 갔음. (일기문)
  Today I went to grandmother’s house. [diary]
- 성적이 우수하여 상장을 수여함. (상장)
  This certificate is awarded in recognition of excellent academic achievement. [certificate of merit—prize testimonial]
- 김명수 올림. (편지)
  Yours Sincerely, … [in letters]

**Examples of Lexicalized ‘-(으)자’**

In some cases, examples of verb stem plus ‘-(으)자’ have fossilized as nouns, and lost all their verbal qualities.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>영어</th>
<th>한국어</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>walk</td>
<td>pace, gait</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sleep</td>
<td>sleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smile, laugh</td>
<td>smile, laughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoyable</td>
<td>enjoyment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smile, laugh</td>
<td>smile, laughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happy</td>
<td>happiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enjoyable</td>
<td>enjoyment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>death</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples:

We met after such a long time that I was unable to conceal my joy.

We carry on living, ignorant of the happiness and sorrow of others.

I saw my mother in my dreams last night.

It’s not easy, but still we carry on from one day to the next, enjoying what we can.

Probably all of us are afraid of death.

Chapter Fourteen

Auxiliary Verbs

Auxiliary verbs are verbs whose original meaning and function as independent verbs has become bleached or changed, and then fixed in some new, more restricted and more strictly grammatical meaning. They are always used in conjunction with a preceding main verb and one specific suffix or ending, and 'help' (hence the term 'auxiliary' the main verb express a particular nuance or aspect. Auxiliary verbs in Korean can be classified according to the scheme in Figure 21 below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>가다, 오다, 있다, 옮다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminative</td>
<td>넣다, 나다, 버리다, 받다, 빼다, 치우다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Donatory</td>
<td>주다, 드리다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exploratory</td>
<td>보다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iterative</td>
<td>데다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retentive</td>
<td>놓다, 두다, 가지다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desiderative</td>
<td>싸다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stative</td>
<td>있다, 지다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>말다, 않다, 아니하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inability</td>
<td>못하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periphsastic patterns</td>
<td>-(겠/이/아/야)하다, -(는/는)하다, -(을)ㄴ/는 하다, -(으)ㄴ/는 줄하다,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Figure 21) Auxiliary Verbs (보조용언)
1. Progressive Auxiliary Verbs

-어(아, 어) 가다/오다
-어(아, 어) 가다: gradually (goes off doing); keeps growing ~ becoming (getting to be), goes on, progressively; continues to do (from now on), keeps (on) doing
-어(아, 어) 오다: gradually (in doing); comes up (along); starts (has started) becoming ~ doing; has ~ been doing

In their original meanings, the verbs '가다' and '오다' express a shift in location—they are verbs of motion, of going and coming. '가다' expresses motion away from the speaker, and '오다' expresses motion toward the speaker. When deployed as auxiliary verbs, they signify that an action is carried out continuously and repeatedly over a period of time. In keeping with the original meaning of these verbs, the patterns '어(아, 어) 오다' and '어(아, 어) 가다' mean 'continuous performance of an action over time in the past as one comes toward the present and continuous performance of an action over time into the future (away from the present)' respectively.

Examples:
-어(아, 어) 가다
그 일이 잘 되어 간다.
That project is moving along nicely.
문제를 거의 다 풀어 갔습니다.
I'm almost finished solving the problem.
버스가 이쪽으로 다가 왔습니다.
The bus is racing toward us in this direction.
저는 그 할머니를 아버니처럼 모시 왔어요.
I have cared for that old lady like my own mother.

-어(아, 어) 오다
이 대화는 다시 와보세요.
Please memorize this dialogue before you come back. ['please come having memorized this dialogue.']
방에 떨어진 산물 좀 집어 오세요.
Could you please pick up the newspapers lying on the ground? ['please come, having picked up…']
열심이 아주머니가 밥을 해 왔습니다.
The lady next door made us some ricecakes. ['…came, having made ricecakes…']

-고 있다
is doing; is—continues to be in a (changed) state

This pattern expresses an action in progress, in mid-course or mid-process, and is restricted to action verbs. When the subject is an esteemed person, honorification is achieved by changing '있다' to '계시다': '고 계시다'. (See page 196).

Examples:
저는 그 시간에 잡을 자고 있었습니다.
At that time I was sleeping.
This pattern combines a verb of motion with the connective ending -(으)려 meaning for the purpose of ing and expresses an intention, object or goal. This pattern is used only with action verbs. (See page 97).

Examples:
그 사람은 도서관에 책을 빌리려 갔다.
He went to the library to borrow a book.
너 여기에 누구 만나러 왔니?
Whom have you come here to meet? (Or: Have you come here to meet somebody?)
아침에는 일하려 가는 사람들로 지하철이 맡웠어요.
The subway is full in the mornings with people on their way to work.
그 학생은 학교에 공부하려 온 게 아니예요.
That student did not come to school to study.
나는 집심을 식당에 가다가 친구를 만났습니다.
On the way to the cafeteria to eat lunch I met a friend.

-(으)려 둔다
undertakes to do; embarks on doing

This pattern is restricted to action verbs, and generally appears in the structure -(으)려 둔 이런 어려하다 if or once one sets about...ing, then such—and—such. In other words, the pattern expresses the idea of embarking on an action, setting about doing something, getting down to action.

Examples:
중일 놀다가도 일하려 둔 이런 아주 잘해야.
Even if I've been fooling around all day, once I get down to my work, I do a good job.

2. Terminative Auxiliary Verbs (종결의 보조용언)

Terminative auxiliary verbs express the idea that the action of the main verb has been completed. Depending on the specific terminative auxiliary verb used, this basic meaning of ‘completion’ is augmented by other aspectual meanings.

-어(아, 여) 데다
does all the way (to the very end, thoroughly, through and through); does to the point of obtaining the result sought; manages to do (to get it done)

This particular pattern carries the nuance of ‘이러셔도 그 동작을 끝까지 한다’, i.e. ‘difficult though it may be, one carries out an action to the very end’.

Examples:
철수는 그 책을 끝까지 읽어 봤어요.
Cholso read the book through to the end.
경찰이 그 물건을 찾아 봤습니다.
The police found the item.
그 사람은 결국 그 일을 해 봤어요.
In the end, he managed to do it.
Did that company come up with a good product?

I am determined to find out where that criminal has run off to.

just finished doing [usually past (finished)]

This auxiliary verb pattern is compatible only with action verbs and signifies that the action of the main verb has come to an end. Note that this auxiliary verb structure often combines with the endings ‘-어(-아, 여서)’, ‘-어(-으)니까’, and ‘-어(-으)래’ to yield the complex patterns in ‘-고 나서’ after-ing, ‘-고 나니까’ now that one finishes-...ing, [one realizes that...] and ‘-고 나면 when -after one finishes.

Examples:

just now I am having a rest after having finished the cleaning.

I think I’ll feel a bit refreshed if I make some noise.

Now that I’ve taken the medicine, the pain seems to be subsiding a bit.

Even after saying what I wanted to say, I still feel angry.

does completely, gets it (all) done, disposes of (the job); (does it) all up – down – away – off; does to my disappointment or regret; does to my relief

This pattern signifies that the action of the main verb has been completed with little or no room to spare, and is confined to action verbs.

Examples:

Take your money and put it in the bank before you spend it all.

lie said everything I wanted to say so I just remained quiet.

In some cases, this pattern signifies that the action of the main verb produced a state or result different from what one had expected or hoped for.

Examples:

That friend took off for the United States.

My little sister ate all the cookies.

I forgot my appointment with my friend.

All the fish in the fish bowl died on me.

In some cases, this pattern indicates that the speaker experiences a sense of relief when some action comes to an end.

Examples:

I remembered all my homework.

I’ve broken up with him now.

All the fish in the fish bowl died on me.

In some cases, this pattern signifies that the action of the main verb has been completed with little or no room to spare, and is confined to action verbs.

Examples:

오늘 지하철에서 지갑을 잃어 버렸어요.

Today I lost my wallet on the subway.

I’m going to burn up this document.

He said everything I wanted to say so I just remained quiet.

Examples:

He said everything I wanted to say so I just remained quiet.

Yesterday I finished off the manuscript.
That dreadful person has moved away.
The hot and muggy summer has [finally] passed.

-고 말다
finally gets around to doing, ends up doing; will (emphatically) do it, by gosh

This pattern signifies that an action has been completed, but that the speaker had had no desire or intention for the action to happen, or that the speaker is less than pleased with the result of the action. On the other hand, the related pattern in ‘-고 야 말나’ signifies a strong will, determination or resolve on the part of the speaker.

Examples:
- 고 말다

It was so sad that I ended up crying.
My little sister ended up breaking the vase.
She eventually got her wish.
I am determined to do it.
She got angry and stormed out.

-어(아, 여) 하다
gets to be (old—roten—musty—… ) through and through

The main verb in this construction is usually a descriptive verb, and the auxiliary pattern emphasizes that the state in question has deteriorated. The main verb also tends to carry a negative meaning.

Examples:
- 어(아, 여) 하다

That machine is old and decrepit.

This auxiliary pattern adds the nuance of ‘남김없이 모두’ i.e., ‘[does it] in its entirety without exception or leftovers.’ But the main verb is confined to a handful of verbs like ‘하다’ do, ‘먹다’ eat, ‘팔다’ sell, etc.

Examples:
- 어(아, 여) 하다

Do away with all the useless books.
The maid took care of all that laundry in one go.
He dusts off a bowl of rice in the twinkling of an eye and then asks for more.
3. Donatory Auxiliary Verbs (봉사의 보조용인)

-어(아, 여)주다/드리다
does as a favor (for), does for the benefit of

This auxiliary construction signifies that the action of the main verb is performed for the benefit of somebody. When the beneficiary of the action is an esteemed person, '주다' can be replaced with '드리다'. (See page 210).

Examples:

Cholsu helped his brother with his homework.
Science has made life convenient for human beings.
Mr. Kim teaches us songs.

Yesterday I helped my mother at home.
I know you must be busy, so thank you for coming.

Would you please ... for me? I'll ... for you.

The first of these two patterns is used when the speaker seeks permission from the hearer to perform an action for his or her benefit. An affirmative answer from the hearer would then use the second pattern.

Examples:

A) Would you like me to show the way there?
B) Yes, please do that.

A) Would you like me to lend you this book?
B) Yes, please do.

When the speaker expects or requests the listener to perform some action, (s)he uses the pattern in '-어(아, 여) 주시겠습니까?'. The affirmative reply to this request would then use the pattern in '-어(아, 여) 드리겠습니까'. Thus, the pattern in '-어(아, 여) 주시겠습니까?' is a sort of more polite equivalent of the honorific command form in '-(으)십시오'.

Examples:

A) Could you explain this to me please?
B) Sure, I'll explain it for you.

A) Could you please say hello to her for me?
B) Yes, I'll say hello for you when I see her.

A) Could you please attend the meeting in my place?
B) No, I'm afraid I can't do that for you.
4. Exploratory Auxiliary Verbs

This pattern signifies that one does, attempts or tries out the action of the main verb just once to explore the consequences. Thus, this pattern can express experience, perception and realization.

**Examples:**
- 비(아) 보다
  - Please think hard about this problem.
  - 그 사람의 말을 들어 봅시다.
  - Let's listen to what she has to say.
  - 설악산에는 온라가 보았습니다.
  - I went up Mt. Sorak.
  - 전 고생을 많이 해 보았어요.
  - I've suffered a lot [in my life].
  - 하라고 하시면 이 일을 맘아 보겠습니다.
  - If you say the word, I'll take on this project.

- 비(아) 보까요?
  - Shall I- we try…ing? Shall I- we give…ing a try?

This pattern is used for a first person subject (I, we) to request permission from the hearer for an action. The affirmative response to this question can take the form ‘예, 비(아) 보시죠’ and ‘예, 비(으) 보시다’.

**Examples:**
- 비(아) 보까요?
  - Shall we try playing some American football? Yes, let’s do.
  - 이번에는 항공편으로 보내 볼까요? 예, 그렇게 하죠.
  - Shall we send it by airmail this time? Yes, let’s do that.
  - 그 사람에게 이 일을 시켜 볼까요? 예, 시켜 봅시다.
  - Shall we get her to do this job? Yes, let’s get her to do it.

- 비(아) 보다
  - one has—does not have the experience of having tried—

This structure combines the exploratory pattern in ‘비(아) 보다’ with the ‘past experience’ pattern in ‘비(으) 보다’, and is used to ask after the presence or absence of a past exploratory experience. (See page 76).

**Examples:**
- 동남아에 가 본 일이 있습니다.
  - I’ve been to southeast Asia before.
- 회사를 경영해 본 일이 있습니까?
  - Have you ever managed a company before?
- 어려움을 겪어 본 일이 없어요.
  - I’ve never experienced any difficulties.
- 추첨에 당첨해 본 일이 없네요.
  - He says he never won anything in the lottery.
- 그를 만나 본 일은 없지만 만났다 많이 들었지요.
  - I’ve never met him, but I’ve heard a lot about him.

5. Iterative Auxiliary Verbs

This pattern indicates that the verb action is performed repeatedly and continuously to an extreme extent.

**Examples:**
- 비(아) 마다
  - does terrible (awfully; a lot), does like mad—crazy—anything

This pattern is used for a first person subject (I, we) to request permission from the hearer for an action. The affirmative response to this question can take the form ‘예, 비(아) 보시죠’ and ‘예, 비(으) 보시다’.

**Examples:**
- 비(아) 보까요?
  - Shall we try playing some American football? Yes, let’s do.
  - 이번에는 항공편으로 보내 볼까요? 예, 그렇게 하죠.
  - Shall we send it by airmail this time? Yes, let’s do that.
  - 그 사람에게 이 일을 시켜 볼까요? 예, 시켜 봅시다.
  - Shall we get her to do this job? Yes, let’s get her to do it.

- 비(아) 보다
  - one has—does not have the experience of having tried—

This structure combines the exploratory pattern in ‘비(아) 보다’ with the ‘past experience’ pattern in ‘비(으) 보다’, and is used to ask after the presence or absence of a past exploratory experience. (See page 76).

**Examples:**
- 동남아에 가 본 일이 있습니다.
  - I’ve been to southeast Asia before.
- 회사를 경영해 본 일이 있습니까?
  - Have you ever managed a company before?
- 어려움을 겪어 본 일이 없어요.
  - I’ve never experienced any difficulties.
- 추첨에 당첨해 본 일이 없네요.
  - He says he never won anything in the lottery.
- 그를 만나 본 일은 없지만 만난 많이 들었지요.
  - I’ve never met him, but I’ve heard a lot about him.
Why are you making such a racket?
그 사람이 편히 웃어 대졌다.

She is always laughing away for no reason.
아이가 계속해서 울어 대는데 어디가 아픈가?
The child just keeps on crying and crying — is it sick or something?
며칠 동안 책을 읽어 편히 눈이 아프다.
I read so much for the past few days that my eyes hurt.
며칠 골쳤는데 계속 먹어 대요.
She must not have eaten for days, seeing how she is eating up a storm.

-은 하다
makes a habit − practice (a regular thing) of doing it; does it from
time to time, sometimes does; DOES do, (+ NEG) never does

This pattern indicates that the same action occurred several times in the
past or else was repeated on a regular basis.

Examples:
- 김 신생활을 만나면 다방에 가곤 했습니다. Whenever I used to meet Mr. Kim, we would go to a tea house.
- 아프면, 이 약방에서 약을 사곤 했어요.
I used to buy my medicine at this pharmacy whenever I got sick.

Auxiliary Verbs 353
- 이(아, 야) 동다
does for later, does in advance, gets it done (so that it will be ready),
does beforehand, completes, accomplishes, gets the doing off one
hands, frees oneself by doing

This pattern indicates that the action of the main verb is complete, and
in restricted to action verbs.

Examples:
- 책을 책꽂이에 끼어 놓았습니다.
I shelved the book in the bookcase.
- 그 사람이 편지를 써 놓았습니다.
She wrote the letter.

This pattern indicates that one maintains the present state of affairs,
and does not change over to any new state.

Examples:
- 이 나무를 옮기지 말고 그대로 삽어 두세요.
Don’t move this tree — Just leave it planted where it is.
- 이 책은 책상에 놓아 두세요.
Please put this book on the desk.

- 어(아, 여) 놓다
does for later, does in advance, gets it done (so that it will be ready),
does beforehand; completes, accomplishes, gets the doing off one
hands, frees oneself by doing

6. Retentive Auxiliary Verbs (보유의 보조용언)

The patterns below indicate that the state pertaining after the comple-
tion of an action persists or is maintained; they also indicate that one
retains the resultant state of an action for possible future use.

Examples:
- 그 나무를 옮기지 말고 그대로 삽어 두세요.
Don’t move this tree — Just leave it planted where it is.
- 이 책은 책상에 놓아 두세요.
Please put this book on the desk.

- 이 말씀 잘 들어 두십시오.
Listen up to what I have to say.
You mustn't just ignore a child with bad habits.
You should make a point of learning this.

This pattern reinforces the idea of 'retaining' or 'maintaining' the completed action, but is never used as a sentence final form. Instead, it always occurs in conjunction with the connective ending '있다' as '어(이, 여) 가지고'. This structure indicates that the subject finishes preceding action and then, maintaining that result, carries on, continues or makes a transition to the next action. Thus, this pattern can indicate temporally linked actions, or else indicate that the preceding clause is a reason or cause for the following clause.

**Examples:**

- 집에서 숙제를 해 가지고 오세요.
  Please bring in your homework after doing it at home.

- 업을 잘 처리 가지고 같이 삽시다.
  Let's build a nice house and then live there together.

- 한국어를 배워 가지고 좋은 친구에게 친숙한 거예요.
  I'm going to learn Korean and then get a good job.

- 너무 놀라 가지고 그 자리에서 남아지고 말았어요.
  She was so surprised that she fell down on the spot.

- 뜻밖에 일이 끝에 해 가지고 기뻐서 어릴 줄 모르고 있어.
  He came in first unexpectedly and so happy he doesn't know what to do with himself.

7. Desiderative Auxiliary Verbs (희망의 보조용언)

These patterns indicate that the speaker or subject wishes for the action or state of the main verb to happen or come about. But depending on the ending on the main verb, the precise meanings of the patterns below can change.

- 고 싶다
  wants to do ~ be

This pattern expresses a hope or wish. Declarative sentences are usually in the first person, and interrogatives are usually in the second person.

**Examples:**

- 요즘 나는 그림을 그리고 싶다.
  Lately I feel like drawing pictures.

- 지금 추위가 심해서 나가고 싶지 않습니다.
  It is cold now so I don't want to go outside.

- 가을이 되면, 산악산에 여행을 가고 싶어요.
  I want to travel to Soraksan when autumn comes.

- 커피 마시고 싶지 않니?
  Don't you want to have some coffee?

- 지금도 그 사람을 만나고 싶습니까?
  Do you still want to meet her?

- 고 싶어요.
  wants to do ~ be

This pattern adds '어(이, 여) 하다' to '싶다', and is used to express hopes and wishes of third person subjects.

**Examples:**

- 천수는 김 선생님을 만나고 싶어요.
  Cholsu wants to meet Mr. Kim.

- 제 친구가 영화를 보고 싶어요.
  My friend wants to see a movie.

- 아이들이 책을 읽고 싶어하지 않아요.
  The kids don't want to read books.

- 학생들이 일찍 집에 가고 싶어요.
  The students want to go home early.
My little brother really misses our mother back home.

feel like doing; wish one could do; would like to do

This pattern expresses the speaker's wish or desire about the entire preceding clause. It has the same meaning as the pattern in "-I (있, 었다)" form.

Examples:
- I don't feel like going to school today.
- Sometimes there are times when I feel like going on a trip.
- I wish I could meet her.
- I wish I could hurry up and forget bad things like that.

-thinks - reckons that perhaps - maybe...

This pattern indicates the speaker's unconfirmed guess or supposition about some fact or state of affairs.

Examples:
- I ate the food thinking it might taste good.
- I have a feeling my friend might call today.
- I thought to myself 'Hey, there are girls as pretty as that, too?' [In other words, 'I had no idea there were girls as pretty as that!']

She must certainly have gone to school [I reckon].

8. Descriptive Auxiliary Verbs (상태의 보조용언)

These patterns indicate the existence of a fact or state of affairs.

-is in a state resulting from

This pattern indicates that the state resulting from the action of the preceding verb continues to exist; it tends to occur primarily with action verbs, but among action verbs it occurs mostly with intransitives.
Examples:

- 엄마는 아직 살아 계실니다.
- My grandmother is still alive.
- 그 사람이 문 앞에 서 있었어요.
- She was standing in front of the door.
- 흰색과 금색이 씌 있어요.
- There are some letters written on the blackboard.
- 벽에 그림이 걸려 있습니다.
- There is a picture hanging on the wall.
- 책상에 책이 놓여 있습니다.
- There is a book ['in a state resulting from having been placed'] on the table.

-어(아, 여) 지다
gets to be, becomes

This pattern usually attaches to descriptive verbs and indicates that the state in question gradually intensifies; it also changes descriptive verbs into intransitive action verbs. In some cases, this pattern can attach to action verbs and turns the verb into a kind of passive (see p. 364~366). In yet other cases, we find examples of fossilized VERB+-어(아, 여) 지다 where the VERB was probably once an independent action verb, but is now no longer found outside this pattern. In these cases, we are forced to treat the entire structure as a separate lexical item.

In cases where -어(아, 여) 지다 attaches to a descriptive verb, thereby creating an action verb, the new expression indicates a process of change, whereby the state indicated by the original descriptive verb increases in intensity.

Examples:

- 어서 남자가 점점 추워집니다.
- The weather is getting gradually colder now.
- 그렇게 열심히 연습하면 발음이 좋아질 거예요.
- If you practice hard like that your pronunciation will get better.
- 배우면 배움수록 어려워지는군요.

The more I learn the more difficult it gets!
- 자주 만나지 못하니까 멀어지는 것 같네요.
- It seems we are growing more distant from each other because we can't meet often.
- 그런 환경에서 자라면서 누구나 성적이 달라질 거예요.
- Anybody's character would change [become different if they grew up in an environment like that.]

When -어(아, 여) 지다 is used after an action verb, it creates an intransitive action verb with passive meaning (see page 365).

Examples:

- 소나기가 좋아지다가 급방 해가 난어요.
- A shower poured down and then the sun came out right away.
- 숨이 끊어졌다가 다시 살아났어요.
- Her breath was cut off, but then she revived again.
- 그 일이 알려지기 전에 발표하십시오.
- Make an announcement before it becomes known.
- 어릴 때의 추억이 점점 잊혀져 가고 있어요.
- The memories of my youth are gradually becoming forgotten.
- 옥수수가 잘 살아가서 밥기가 좋은데요.
- This corn is good to eat because it has been well boiled.

9. Negative Auxiliary Verbs (부정의 보조용언)

-지 말다

In its first meaning, this pattern is used to issue a prohibition against the action or state of the main verb. (see page 213, 216).

Examples:

- 과자 줄게, 울지 말아라.
- I'll give you a cookie — don't cry.
- 건에서 늦게 말고 집안에서 돌아.

Examples:
Don’t play on the street — play in the house.

여기서는 남배를 피우지 마십시오.

Please do not smoke here.

우리 오늘 집에 들어가지 말까요?

Shall we stay out tonight? ["Shall we don’t go home tonight?"]

취지 말고 기도해야 해요.

You have to pray without rest.

This pattern is an abbreviation of the longer form in ‘-에(아, 여) [하다] 말다’ via deletion of ‘하다’, and is usually used with descriptive verbs. The same pattern can be found after verbal nouns denoting actions.

Examples:

- 너무 슬퍼 마십시오.
  Don’t be too sad.
- 괜히 말고 합을 보내요.
  Don’t despair — buck up!
- 염력 말고 하고 싶은 대로 해 보세요.
  Don’t worry — do it like you want to.
- 그런 사람과는 상대 마세요.
  Please do not keep company with a person like that.
- 가 버린 사람은 생각 말고 새 사람을 찾아봅시다.
  Let not dwell on the person who has gone; instead, let us find a new person.

The negative auxiliary verb ‘말다’ can occur with a wide variety of conjunctural endings; in particular, it occurs in a number of paired phrase structures like ‘-거나 말거나’, ‘-거나 말거나’, ‘-나 마나’, ‘-든지 말든지’, ‘-요(으)로지 말지’, etc., with the general meaning (regardless whether) or not. (See page 56, 238, 241, 258, 289).

Examples:

- 내가 놀거나 말거나 참견하지 마.

Whether I’m goofing off or not, don’t interfere.

두 사람이 일을 하거나 말거나 말다툼하고 있어요.

The two of them are arguing over whether they’ll work or not.

영수라면 보나 마나 곳곳하게 계획을 세웠을거야.

It is obvious (Whether I look or not) that Yongsu must have made meticulous plans.

그 사람이 반대하든지 말든지 일을 진행시키세요.

Whether she opposes or not, have her proceed with the work.

그 모임에 갈지 말지 생각중입니다.

I’m debating whether or not to go to that meeting.

-지 않다/아니하다

does~ is not

This pattern attaches to verbs to indicate negation. ‘-지 않다’ is an abbreviation from ‘-지 아니하다’, and both structures have the same meaning. (See page 217).

Examples:

- 오늘은 학교에 가지 않습니다.
  On Saturdays I don’t go to school.
- 네 것은 쓰지 않고 남의 것을 쓰니?
  You use others’ instead of using your own?
- 그 아이는 엄마의 말을 영 들지 않아요.
  That child doesn’t listen to his mother one bit.
- 머리가 그렇지 않아요.
  My head doesn’t hurt all that much.
- 그녀는 마음이 아프지 않구나 예쁘지 않을 거야.
  She has a lovely heart, but her face probably isn’t all that pretty.
10. Auxiliary of Inability Verbs (불능의 보조용언)

-지 못하다

cannot.

This pattern indicates inability or failure to reach a certain standard.
(See page 152).

Examples:

노래는 잘 하지만 그림은 잘 그리지 못해요.
I sing well, but I can't draw well.

자주 만나지 못하니까 더욱더 보고 싶어요.
Because we can't see each other often, I miss you all the more.

돈이 없어서 공부하지 못했습니다.
I couldn't study because we had no money.

그 문이 원순을 쓰지 못하니까 좀 도와 드리세요.
Please help her, as she can't use her left hand.

이 나라 말을 하지 못하니까 얼마나 답답한지 모르겠어요.
You have no idea how frustrated I feel because I can't speak the language here.

Chapter Fifteen

Passive and Causative

By 'passive' we mean a sentence like '도둑이 경찰에게 잡혔습니다.' The thief was caught by the policeman, where a patient (the thief) is on the receiving end of some action (getting caught) on the part of ('by') some agent (the policeman). By contrast, a 'causative' sentence is one like '선생이 학생에게 책을 읽혔습니다.' The teacher had—made the student read the book where a causer (the teacher) makes a causee (the student) perform some action (reading a book).

In Korean, both passives and causatives can be formed in two different ways.

1 Lexical or derived passives are formed by affixing a passive suffix like '-이', '-이', '-리', or '-기' to a verb stem. Likewise, lexical or derived causative forms can be created by affixing causative suffixes like '-이', '-이', '-리', '-기', '-수', '-추' to a verb stem. Traditional Korean grammar calls causatives and passives like this created through suffixation 'short form passives' and 'short form causatives'.

2 Besides the 'short forms' above, there are also 'long form' causatives and passives (also known as 'periphrastic' causatives and passives). The long passive is formed by attaching the auxiliary connective ending '-어(아, 어)지다' to the verb stem, and the long causative is formed by attaching the auxiliary connective ending '-게 하다.' The sphere of usage of the long forms is significantly broader than that of the short forms.
For a more detailed exposition of the long and short passives and causatives with examples, please consult figures 22 and 25 below.

1. Passives (관동)

1) Short Passives (단형관동)

Short passives are formed by attaching the suffix ‘-이’, ‘-이’, ‘-리’, or ‘-기’ to a transitive verb stem. The choice of passive suffix depends on the verb stem, and it is not always possible to formulate rules for the selection of the appropriate suffix. Thus, students need to memorize short passives one by one.

![Figure 22] Short Passives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive Suffix</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-이리</td>
<td>닥터, 풀다, 풀리다, 풀디다. be/get heard be/get bitten be/get untied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- 살리</td>
<td>떨다, 밀리다, 빨리다. be/get sucked be/get pushed be/get pierced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-리</td>
<td>엎디다, 걸리다, 늘리다. be/get opened be/get hung be/get pressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-기</td>
<td>안기다, 죽기다, 갓기다, 벗기다. be/get embraced be/get cut off be/get wrapped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples:

- 저기 남산이 보일습니다. You can see Namsan over there. [Namsan is visible over there.]
- 천수가 반장으로 뽑혔습니다. Cholsu was elected class leader [was chosen as class leader.]
- 문이 지질로 열렸어요. The door opened by itself [was opened of its own accord.]
- 아이가 엽마 품에 안겨 있습니다. The baby is held in its mother’s embrace.
- 도둑이 경찰에게 잡혔어요. The thief was caught by the police.

2) Long Passives (장형관동)

The long passive pattern in ‘-이(하, 하)지다’ can be used with action verbs. But it can not attach to all verbs.
### 2. Causatives (사동)

#### 1) Short Causatives (단형사동)

Short causatives are created by adding one of the causative suffixes ‘-이(-이)’, ‘-히(-히)’, ‘-리(-리)’, ‘-거(-거)’, ‘-꾸’ or ‘-추’ to an intransitive, transitive or descriptive verb stem. The choice of causative suffix depends on the verb stem, and it is not always possible to formulate rules for the selection of the appropriate suffix. Thus, students need to memorize short causatives one by one.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causative suffix</th>
<th>Verb Type</th>
<th>Examples of Short Causatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-히</td>
<td>trans</td>
<td>막이다, 묻이다, 길이다, feed it show it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-리</td>
<td>descriptive</td>
<td>높이다, 높이다, raise it [make high]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-거</td>
<td>intrans</td>
<td>익히다, 막히다, [make narrow widen clarify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-꾸</td>
<td>trans</td>
<td>닫히다, 닫히다, [make narrow widen clarify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-추</td>
<td>intrans</td>
<td>웃히다, 웃히다, [make laugh make remain hide it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-하</td>
<td>trans</td>
<td>슬리다, 슬리다, make compensate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Examples:**

- 이 연필은 글씨가 잘 쓰입니다. (This pencil writes well.)
- 아이들이 놀면서 유리창이 깨어졌어요. (As for this pencil, writing writes itself nicely.)
- 벽난로 누가 먼저 연기시키는 방해적겠지요. (Sooner or later the identity of the criminal will be clarified.)
- 옷이 짐에 앉아서 모양이 풀어졌어요. (Because it wasn't tied well the knot came undone.)
- 모든 사람의 소망이 이루어진다면 얼마나 좋겠어요. (Wish that everybody's wishes came true [were realized?])
### Short Causatives (cont.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Causative suffix</th>
<th>Verb Type</th>
<th>Examples of Short Causatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| -우               | intrans   | 깨우다, 세우다, 재우다, awaken make stop-stand make sleep | *
|                  | trans     | 채우다, 비우다, make full make empty | *
|                  |           | 재우다, 지우다, stay up all night make carry on the back | *
| -추               | intrans   | 낮추다, 낮추다, 늦추다, make fit make low make late (delay) | *

*intrans: intransitive verb; trans: transitive verb

### Examples:

The cat killed the mouse.
The mother dresses the child in pretty clothes.

### Long Causatives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Auxiliary Connective Ending</th>
<th>Long Causative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-가 하다</td>
<td>가게 하다, 보게 하다, 하게 하다, make go make see make do</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>막게 하다, 임게 하다, 쓰게 하다, make eat make read make write-use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>밝게 하다, 높게 하다, 슬프게 하다, make bright make blue make sad</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some verbs allow both long and short causative forms, in which case we can observe a difference in meaning between the two forms. That is, short form causatives are more direct in their causation, while long form causatives are more indirect in their causation. Compare the following causative pairs.

### Examples:

The teacher had that student go home early.
The mother had her child wear pretty clothes.

2) Long Causatives (장형 사동)

Long causatives are formed by adding ‘-개 하다’ to intransitive, transitive and descriptive verbs. Their sphere of usage is much broader than that of short causatives.
Chapter Sixteen
Quoted Speech

By ‘quoted speech’ (‘화법’) we mean those linguistic devices used to convey something said, written or thought, whether by another or by oneself, to another. This citation or quotation process usually involves a temporal or spatial dislocation. Quoted speech is also sometimes referred to as ‘indirect speech’.

Quoted speech in Korean is usually classified into two types: direct (직접화법) and indirect (간접화법). The former is used to quote the speaker or a third person’s words verbatim, that is, with exactly the same forms used at the time of the original utterance. In indirect quoted speech, on the other hand, the speaker manipulates or changes the original linguistic forms to accommodate the situation and position of the person being quoted.

The key point to remember here is that ‘indirect speech’ is concerned not merely with the reporting of words or what has been written or said, but also with the reporting of thoughts, claims, and feelings (perhaps one could think of the latter cases as ‘internal speech’). Here are some examples.

Cases of reporting the words or writing of a third person:

어떤 외국인이 “미국 대사관이 어디 있습니까?”라고 물었다.
Some foreigner asked: “Where is the American embassy?”
천수가 자기 형이 세 자전거를 샀다고 나한테 말했다.
Cholsu told me that his older brother had bought a new bicycle.
Cases of reporting one's own thoughts or feelings:

- I believe that what he said is correct.
- We think that that accident was caused by shoddy construction.

1. Direct Quoted Speech (직접담법)

Direct quoted speech is used to report the spoken or written words of another verbatim, with exactly the same linguistic forms used at the time of the original utterance. In this case, the original verbatim utterance can take quotation marks ("..."), and the quotation is followed by a quotation particle like '-(이)라고' or '-(하고)' plus a predicate (a reporting verb). The two quotation particles '-(이)라고' and '-(하고)' are slightly different; '-(하고)' allows the reporter to copy or mimic even the tone and intonation of the quoted utterance inside the quotation marks, and thus is used for purposes of emphasis. The structure of sentences with direct quoted speech is as follows:

subject reportee quoted sentence quotation predicate particle (reporting verb)

Examples:

- Yonghui said to Cholsu: "I’ll see a movie this weekend.
- Mr. Lee asked me: “Do you read the newspaper every day?”
- My little sister suddenly shouted: “Mom!”
- The sound of the church bell went “Ding, dong.”
- Mother told me: “Eat your supper.”

2. Indirect Quoted Speech (간접담법)

Direct quoted speech and indirect quoted speech are closely related to each other, but they also have their differences. For example, direct quoted speech reports quoted utterances verbatim, but in indirect quoted speech, the speaker modifies the quoted utterance to accommodate the position of the original speaker (the person being quoted). Thus, indirect quoted speech appears in a great many more different forms than direct reported speech.

1) Characteristic for Indirect Quoted Speech

Whereas direct reported speech uses the quotation particles ‘-(이)라고’ or ‘-(하고)’, indirect reported speech uses the quotation particle ‘-고’. In other words, the pattern is: Subject - Reportee - Quoted Utterance - Predicate.

Examples:

- In front of the statue was written: “Be ambitious, young boys!”
subject, reportee, quoted utterance, quotation, particle, predicate(reporting verb)

Yonghui asked Cholsu what he was doing this weekend.

(2) When direct quoted speech is converted to indirect quoted speech, a number of changes occur in the final endings of the quoted utterance (see figure 26 below).

(3) The speech levels in the final endings of the quoted utterance are neutralized. Thus, speech level degradations disappear in quoted utterances in indirect quoted speech, and the morphology becomes somewhat more simplified and streamlined.

〈Figure 26〉 Changes in Final Endings in Indirect Quotations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence Type</th>
<th>Verb Type</th>
<th>Ending Change</th>
<th>Quoted Utterance (Indirect)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>AVst</td>
<td>- /는다</td>
<td>천수가 나에게 비가 온다고 했어요. Cholsu told me it was raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DVst</td>
<td>-다</td>
<td>천수가 배가 고프다고 말했어요. Cholsu said he was hungry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-이다</td>
<td>(이)라</td>
<td>천수가 이건 책이라고 말했습니다. Cholsu said this is a book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>AVst</td>
<td>-( 느)나</td>
<td>어머니가 비가 오냐고 물었습니다. Mother asked if it is raining.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DVst</td>
<td>-(을)나</td>
<td>어머니가 날씨가 무魉냐고 하셨습니다. Mother asked if the weather is hot.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-이다</td>
<td>-(이)나</td>
<td>어머니가 이게 무슨 책이나고 하셨습니다. Mother asked what kind of book this is.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Because exclamatory sentences behave in the same way as declarative sentences, we have omitted them as a separate category.

On the basis of the changes in the final endings in indirect reported speech shown in Figure 26 above, let us now examine concrete examples of each indirect reported speech ending type in more detail.

Declarative Sentences

Examples:

Yonghui asked her mother that she is on vacation starting from tomorrow.

My friend introduced him to me as her fiance. [Lit. : My friend introduced him to me, saying that he is her fiance.]

The families were glad ['saying' or 'thinking' to themselves] that it is a long weekend starting tomorrow.

She told her friend that she studies Korean two hours every day.

They said on the weather report that the weather this summer is hot and muggy.

Interrogative Sentences

Examples:

On the basis of the changes in the final endings in indirect reported speech shown in Figure 26 above, let us now examine concrete examples of each indirect reported speech ending type in more detail.

Declarative Sentences

Examples:

Yonghui asked her mother that she is on vacation starting from tomorrow.

My friend introduced him to me as her fiance. [Lit. : My friend introduced him to me, saying that he is her fiance.]

The families were glad ['saying' or 'thinking' to themselves] that it is a long weekend starting tomorrow.

She told her friend that she studies Korean two hours every day.

They said on the weather report that the weather this summer is hot and muggy.

Interrogative Sentences

Examples:

My friend told me to come quickly.

My friend suggested we have a meal together.
My friend asked Cholsu what he is doing this weekend.
어머니가 아이들에게 배가 고프냐고 물었습니다.
The mother asked her son if he was ['is'] hungry.
시생님은 학생에게 왜 한국말을 배우냐고 했습니다.
The teacher asked the student why she is learning Korean.
순경이 사람들에게 이 자동차는 누구의 차냐고 물었습니다.
The patrolman asked the people whose car this is.
시생님은 학생들에게 오늘은 머칠이냐고 물었습니다.
The teacher asked the students what day it is today.

Imperative Sentences

Examples:
부모님이 아이들에게 길을 건널 때 조심하라고 하십시오.
The parents tell the children to be careful when they cross the street.
할머니가 손자가 벗을 천천히 잘 맡아 먹으라고 말씀하셨습니다.
The grandmother told her grandson to eat slowly and chew his food well.
저는 밤마다 부모님께 안녕히 주무시라고 인사합니다.
Every night I say goodnight to my parents.
교통 질서를 지키라고 하지만 많은 사람들이 이를 어김니다.
They say you should observe the traffic regulations, but many people disobey them.
의사가 환자에게 약을 시간에 맞춰 먹으라고 지시했습니다.
The doctor instructed the patient to take his medicine on time.

Propositive Sentences

Examples:
그 문이 저를 만나자고 했습니다.
He asked to meet me.
친구가 여름 휴가를 같이 보내자고 했지만 바빠서 못 했습니다.
My friend suggested spending our summer holidays together, but I was too busy.
그 남자는 그녀에게 결혼하자고 청혼했습니다.
That man proposed marriage to her. [Lit. : ...proposed to her, saying

'let's get married'.]
남편이 아내에게 오 년 후에 아파트로 이사하라고 말했습니다.
The husband suggested to the wife that they move to an apartment in five years' time.
영철이는 주말에 자기 생일에 친구를 초대하라고 했습니다.
Yongchul pestered me to invite his friends over on the weekend for his birthday.

(4) When direct reported speech is converted to indirect reported speech, deictics or pointing words like personal pronouns, verb tense, place pronouns and honorifics are changed to fit the perspective of the reporter in his or her utterance situation.

Examples:
친구가 선생님에게 "제가 숙제를 했어요."라고 말했습니다.
친구 said to his teacher: "I did my homework."
→ Cholsu said to his teacher that he had done his homework.
그 친구는 나에게 "여 오늘 날 보태 전화했니?" 하고 물었습니다.
그 친구는 나에게 오늘 자기 전화를 했나고 물었습니다.
That friend asked me: "Did you call me today?"
→ That friend asked me if I had called him today.
선생님은 "네가 하겠다."라고 말씀하셨습니다.
선생님 is saying "I'll do it."
The teacher said: "I'll do it."
→ The teacher said she would do it.
그 년은 선생님에게 "어기 않으십시오."라고 했습니다.
그 년은 선생님에게 여기 않으라고 했습니다. (앞을 자리에서 가까이 있을 때)
그 년은 선생님에게 저기 않으라고 했습니다. (앞을 자리에서 멀리 있을 때)
She said to the guest: "Please sit here."
→ She told the guest to sit here (speaker is close to the seat).
→ She told the guest to sit over there (speaker is not close to the seat).
He asked: “Is this Seoul?”
→ He asked if this was [“is”] Seoul (speaker is in Seoul).
→ He asked if it was Seoul (speaker not in Seoul).

My friend said yesterday: “Tomorrow I’m leaving Korea.”
→ Yesterday my friend said he is leaving Korea today.

John said: “I had no idea summer in Korea would be this hot.”
→ John said he had no idea that summer in Korea would be this hot. (in Korea)
→ John said he had no idea that summer in Korea would be so hot. (outside of Korea)

The following patterns are reported speech structures which foreign learners often confuse or otherwise have trouble in using effectively and correctly.

Examples:

Don’t touch.
→ It says [in writing] not to touch.

Please do not smoke inside the building.
→ I cautioned them not to smoke inside the building.

Please do not enter the lawns. [I.e. Stay off the grass.]
→ She says to stay off the grass.

Please say no more about that problem.
→ She says not to say anything more about that problem.

Examples:

Excuse me, but would you please pass the salt?
→ He says he is sorry, but would you please pass the salt?

Please teach me Korean.
→ He’s asking you to teach him Korean.

Please send the car to Seoul Station by 12 o’clock.
→ She asks that you send the car to Seoul Station by 12 o’clock.

Please watch the baby for me.
→ She is asking you to watch the baby for her.
are many cases where one can ‘reconstruct’ quotation-like structures by resurrecting a lost or omitted ‘-고 하다’, there are still other cases where, for historical reasons, this structural restitution does not work. In such cases, we must recognize these quotation-like patterns as new, grammaticalized patterns where the dummy verb ‘하’ has no concrete meaning of its own, but has developed in a different direction, into an indicator (or ‘reporter’, of the speaker’s attitude, emotion or judgement.

## Deletion of the Quotation Particle ‘-고’ and of Dummy Verb ‘하-’

Both the quotation particle ‘-고’ and the dummy verb of quotation ‘하-’ can be, and often are, omitted, leaving the verb ending after ‘하-’ in direct contact with the reported sentence or phrase. However, while there

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence Type</th>
<th>Ending Change</th>
<th>Formal Style Abbreviation</th>
<th>Informal Style Abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Declarative</td>
<td>-나/는다</td>
<td>간다고 합니다 → 간다</td>
<td>간데요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>says it is going</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-(으)나</td>
<td>책이라고 합니다 → 책</td>
<td>책이네요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>says it is a book</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative</td>
<td>-(으)나</td>
<td>보냐고 합니다 → 보냐</td>
<td>보네요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>asks if one sees</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-(으)나</td>
<td>싸냐고 합니다 → 싸냐</td>
<td>싸네요</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>asks if it is expensive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Quoted Speech 383

Korean has the following structures where quoted phrases are followed by final endings.

**N (이) 합니다, N (이) 합니까?**

This structure is based on a quoted phrase which originates as a Noun + Copula structure in 'N (이) 다'; the '-(으)殓다' changes to '-(으)殓니' in the reported speech pattern, and 'N (이)라고 합니다' then loses its '-고 하-. Note that, as with all indirect reported speech patterns in general, this structure need not be confined to verbal quotations of third persons (or oneself). These patterns can also serve to report or convey the speaker emotion, feeling or acknowledgment concerning some fact. Therefore, it is not the case that direct reported speech and indirect reported speech are always mutually interchangeable.

#### Examples:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>이 아이가 우리 아들이입니다.</td>
<td>What I'm saying is that this is my son.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>저 학생이 최우수생이올까?</td>
<td>You mean to say that student is the top of her class?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>이것은 둘도 없는 귀한 책이당력니다.</td>
<td>He says this is a unique and precious book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>그 사람은 동분하는 일에 앞서 닮은 일들입니다.</td>
<td>They say he is a good, indispensable worker.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (1) Cases with Final Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperative</th>
<th>- (으)殓다</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>앉으라고 합니다 → 앉으려요</td>
<td>says to sit down</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Suggestion</th>
<th>-(으)殓</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>쉬자고 합니다 → 쉬자요</td>
<td>suggests we rest</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In order to make sure that the learner fully understands the forms and usages of these various patterns, let us now examine these structures again according to the types of endings that can attach, via abbreviation, to reported phrases and sentences.
need not be confined to reporting verbal quotations heard from others, but can also function to express, or reiterate, one's own feelings or emotions about some fact.

**Examples:**

They say that from tomorrow the temperature will drop below zero.  
그들은 내일부터 날씨가 더욱 추울 것이라고 말합니다.

Doesn't he say he's thinking of leaving with us?  
그가 우리와 함께 떠나려고 하는 건 아닌가요?

What I'm saving is that when I went to school I didn't study hard.  
내가 싶은 것은 학교에 다닐 때 얼마나 열심히 공부하지 않았던 것임을 말하고 싶은데요.

He wants to know where you're going in such a hurry.  
그는 제가 이런 급한 일에 가는 데 어떤 계획이 있는지 궁금해요.

She's asking if you made those clothes yourself.  
그녀는 당신이 직접 이 의류를 만드셨는지 물으시네요.

This pattern has its origins in a reported speech phrase followed by the final ending in ‘-나는 말하다’ plus ‘고 해 (으)’, but with the ‘-고 하-’ deleted. Thus, in actual usage, this ending attaches as ‘-와 (으)’, ‘-나는 말하다’, ‘-나는 하는 (으)’, ‘-와 (으)’ and ‘-나는 하는 (으)’.

Note also that reported sentences built on the copular ‘N(이)다’ structure appear here with the pattern ‘N(이)라 (으)’.

**Examples:**

She's asking what day it is tomorrow.  
그녀는 내일이几요?

He says to leave for work an hour earlier starting tomorrow.  
그분은 내일부터 일찍 일찍 일찍 출근해 주시길 바랍니다.

They say the weather will get colder tomorrow.  
그들은 빗 때가 더 추울 것이라고 말합니다.

They say that the mice hear nighttime talk and the bird hear daytime talk.  
[Proverb: The ears have walls, i.e. Always watch what you say.]

He says to take this medicine 30 minutes after eating.  
고는 이 약을 식사 후 30분 뒤에 먹으십시오.

He's suggesting that since pop music is noisy, we listen to classical music.  
그는 점포 뮤직은 소음이 많으니 클래식 음악을 들어보시는 건 어떨까 싶어요.

He says to take this medicine 30 minutes after eating.  
고는 이 약을 식사 후 30분 뒤에 먹으십시오.

He says to take this medicine 30 minutes after eating.  
고는 이 약을 식사 후 30분 뒤에 먹으십시오.

He says to take this medicine 30 minutes after eating.  
고는 이 약을 식사 후 30분 뒤에 먹으십시오.
The government says to simplify all ceremonies.
They say to help out because the farm village is short of workers.
He suggests that if we have any ideas we try working together.
He suggests we go ahead and accept that proposal.
He suggests we forget that ever happened.

(2) Cases with Different Reporting Verbs

Indirect reported speech takes the general pattern 'reported phrase + -고 + reporting verb' but because there are so many different types of reporting verb, the semantic relationship between embedded quotation and matrix quoting verb can take a number of different forms.

Note also that the 'reporting verb' constituent of the general pattern schematized above can also take the form of a verb phrase or clause, or even of an entire sentence. Here are some examples.

- (이)라고 + Reporting Verb (Phrase)

In cases where the quoted clause ends in the copular pattern in 'N이다', the '이다' is changed to '이라' which then takes the quotation particle '-고'. Of course, as already stressed above, this structure need not be confined to reporting the utterances of others or of oneself, but can also function to narrate one's own feelings, emotions or judgement.

Examples:
저는 김영수라고 합니다.
My name is Kim Yongsu. Or I am called Kim Yongsu.
저는 그것이 최선의 방법이라고 생각합니다.
I think that is the best way.
그 문이 잘못되어 다음 줄 토요일이라고 들었습니다.

- (는)다고 + Reporting Verb (Phrase)

Examples:
김 선생님은 언제 귀국하십니까?
When did Mr. Kim say he was going back to Korea?
저는 그 의견이 좋다고 생각합니다.
Everybody thinks that opinion is a good one.
저는 그 문이 학위를 받았다고 들었습니다.
I heard he got his degree.
저는 그 회사의 기반이 돈같다고 했습니다.
I was of the view that that company's foundation was solid.
저는 아내에게 앞으로는 술을 입에 대지 않겠다고 약속했습니다.
I promised my wife that I would never again let alcohol touch my lips.
저는 한국은 유교사상의 영향을 많이 받았다고 할 수 있습니다.
One can say that Korea was greatly influenced by Confucian thought.
저는 아내에게 앞으로는 술을 입에 대지 않겠다고 약속했습니다.
I promised my wife that I would never again let alcohol touch my lips.

- (는)다고 + Quotational Clause

In this structure, the embedded indirect reported speech clause preceding the matrix verb quotational clause serves to indicate the reason for or intention underlying the following clause. In other words, one could view this structure as being related to the reason pattern in '- (는)다고 + 하(- which (dummy quotation verb) + -(이)아, 여)서 (connective ending for 'reason') via deletion of the dummy verb.
Examples:

Everybody is envious of you because you ended up with a good husband.
Your father was angry because you weren’t doing things his way.
She left without eating breakfast because she was going to be late for school.
Everybody is studying hard so that they all might get into the best universities.
Mother was fretting all day long that we’re short for the tuition fees.

-(으)라고 + Quotational Clause

When the embedded reported speech phrase is an imperative, the final ending ‘-(으)라고’ is followed by the quotation particle ‘-고’. In sentences like the following, the downstairs quoted clause serves as a concrete reason or cause for the contents of the following clause. Alternatively, it can also indicate the contents of the noun presented in the following clause.

Examples:

Mother urged us to leave early so as not to be late.
She has been cautioned several times to write her letters properly.
Somebody came to ask you to stamp your seal on the document.
A letter arrived asking us to recommend a good worker.
I stuck up a sign saying to keep off the grass.

In this structure, ‘그래(요)’ can be seen as a form of ‘그렇다’, but here it has no particular meaning of its own, and instead functions in the place of any number of other possible reporting verbs (e.g. ‘말하다’ say, ‘전하다’ convey, ‘부탁하다’ ask a favor of, etc.). Depending on the final ending, this pattern functions as a declarative, imperative, suggestion, etc.

Examples:

Tell him his friend from Sodaemun called.
Did he say he wouldn’t be able to keep tomorrow’s appointment?
Tell him not to be late for today’s meeting.
Suggest to him that we go on a trip for a change of pace.

(3) Cases with Different Connective Endings

It is normal in quotative constructions for the embedded quotation phrase to take the quotation particle ‘-고’ after its final ending, and then attach the dummy quotation verb ‘하-’. This latter verb can then take any number of connective endings depending on the conjugational usage in question, and, as one might expect, this new extended structure can optionally omit the sequence ‘-고 하-’. In some cases, restoring the deleted ‘-고 하-’ sequence renders a grammatical structure, and there is no appreciable difference in function between the longer structure with ‘-고 하-’ and the shorter, abbreviated structure without it. But in others, because of a historical process of grammaticalization, the shorter, abbreviated pattern without ‘-고 하-’ has hardened into a new sort of pattern, where the dummy verb ‘하-’ no longer has a concrete, identifiable
meaning and the whole collocation instead takes on a new grammatical function.

**Examples:**

시간이 없다면서 놀기만 합니다.
All she does is fool around, even while claiming she has no time.
포로겠다니가 해 자꾸 물어?
I told you, I don't know — why do you keep asking?
시간을 쫒 지키겠다니가 왜 이렇게 웃었어?
He said he would be sure to be on time, so why is he so late?
그 동안 바쁘시더니에 도와 드릴지요.
I helped her because she said she was busy.
힘들면서 생활하기가 어렵다면 부업을 가지세요.
If it is difficult to make a living on the basis of your salary, take up a side job.
그 사람이 최선을 다 했지만 결과는 좋지 않았습니다.
He says he did his best, but the results were not good.
외국에서 귀한 손님이 오신데서 왜 이리고들 있습니까?
They say an important guest is coming from abroad, so why are you all [goofing off] like this?
그 건강한 사람이 쓰러지다니 믿을 수가 없네요.
To think that such a healthy person would collapse — I can’t believe it!
공부를 잘 한다고 모든 것을 다 잘하는 것은 아닙니다.
Just because you’re a good student doesn’t mean you’re good at everything.
식을 없이 내린다면 그래 사실인가?
They say the price of gasoline is going down — is that true?
내가 오늘은 왜 이렇게 심수를 많이 한다는?
What is it with me today with all these mistakes?

When the conditional ending in ‘-(으)면’ attaches to the final ending ‘-자’ on an embedded reported clause, the subject is typically people in general or one, and the pattern expresses an intention-related condition.

In meaning, this structure is similar to the pattern in ‘-(으)리면’, but with the difference that the subject of the intention is a generalized and impersonalized one; thus, these two patterns are not always interchangeable.

1. One usage of this pattern is an abbreviation of the combination of the pattern in ‘-고자 하다’ (see page 254) and the conditional pattern in ‘-(으)면’ (see page 302): ‘-고자 하면’.

**Examples:**

외국에 가서 공부하자면 돈이 많이 필요합니다.
If you want to go abroad to study, you need a lot of money.
남의 말에서 일자면 할든 것도 받아야 합니다.
If you want to work under somebody else, you have to put up with tough times, too.
좋은 직업을 구하자면 설리에 있어야 합니다.
If you want to find a good job, you have to have talent.
그동까지 같이 올라가자면 맘 좀 용릴 필요.
If you intend to go up to the 6th floor on foot, you’ll be sweating a bit.
슬쩍히 말씀드리자면 엄론의 자유가 없는 것 같더군요.
Frankly speaking, it appeared that there was no freedom of speech.

2. Another usage of this pattern is analyzed as the abbreviation of ‘-자고 하면’, built from the conditional ending in ‘-(으)면’ and the indirect quoted question pattern in ‘-자고 하다’ (see page 254); this second usage is confined to action verbs.

**Examples:**

마시기 싫어도 내가 마시자면 마셔야지 왔.
I don’t want to drink it, but if you say so, I guess I have to drink it, don’t I?
친구가 가자면 친리 갈도 따라 갈것야.
If my friend asks me to, I’ll follow him for a thousand li.
웃시가 하자면 하자는 대로 하야겠지요?
If a superior suggests you do something with him, you’ll have to do as he says, right?
I'm saying that a man who loves his wife is somebody who does whatever she suggests and stops doing something whenever she says stop.

If your fellow classmates all decide to raise some money, are you going to chip in, too?

This is another quotational pattern with deleted ‘-고 하-’, and the negative question in the second clause is a rhetorical device to emphasize an affirmation. In other words, this negative question serves to emphasize one's affirmation to the listener.

Examples:

Isn't there an old saying which goes: "If the chicken cries, the house goes to ruin?" [Proverb: If the wife wears the trousers, the home goes to pot.]

Isn't there a saying that if the bride smiles on her wedding day, her first child will be a daughter?

Isn't there a proverb to the effect that one can pay off a debt of a thousand gold pieces if only one talks well?

Me, rich? Wouldn't that be nice!

You know the saying a good neighbour is better than a brother far off.

Korean also has some quotative structures which originate in the deletion of an entire clause following a connective ending. In such cases, politeness can be achieved by attaching the polite marker ‘-요’.

When used as an interrogative, this pattern repeats and thereby queries (for confirmation), or even shows disagreement with the words of one counterpart.

Examples:

이번에 장학금을 받았다고요?
You say you got a scholarship this time?

수출 목표액을 달성하기 어렵다고요?
You say it's difficult to reach our export target?

이혼했던 사람들이 다시 화해했다고요?
You say the couple who divorced have made up again?

이 범행기가 북한에서 넘어온 비행기라고요?
You say this is the plane that came across from North Korea?

내가 부자라고요? 그러나 얼마가 좋겠습니까.

Me, rich? Wouldn't that be nice!

그 분이 신랄한 사람이라고요? 전 믿을 수 없습니다.

You say she is a virtuous person? I can't believe it.

-니/는 다지 않습니까?

This pattern has the form of a question, but in actual fact serves to show disagreement with or doubt about what one counterpart has just said.

Examples:

가: 이제 제가 왕났습니다.
나: 페라니요?

Thanks for all your trouble yesterday.

Trouble? Don't mention it.

가: 이제 수입품이지요?
나: 수입품이리라고요? 귀산이에요.

This is an import, isn't it?

Are you kidding? It's made in Korea.

가: 이런 면역하기는 쉽지요?
나: 쉽다요? 그럼 직접 해 보세요.

This is easy to translate, isn't it?

Easy?! Then why don't you try it yourself.
Chapter Sixteen

Let's call it a day.
Call it a day?! We have to finish it today.

Please do my homework for me.
Do your homework for you?

(4) Cases with Adnominal Endings

Another subtype of patterns based on quotation structures combines an embedded reported speech clause ending in ‘-는다’ with the adnominal modifiers ‘-의’, ‘-는’, ‘-의는’ or ‘-던’. Of course, these structures, too, come from deletion of ‘-고 하-’.

Examples:

They are completely clueless about the concept of democracy.

You don’t know the proverb ‘Even monkeys fall from trees’?

I heard that many flood victims have come about due to the torrential rains.

We had intended to head toward the seaside, but our footsteps were leading us away toward the mountain.

We meant to make her laugh but ended up making her cry.

(5) Cases with Nominalizer Endings

These patterns add the nominalizer ending in ‘-기’ to an embedded reported speech clause ending in ‘-(으)-는다’.

Examples:

All I did was meet him once, seeing as how you said he was a nice person.

When he suggested I invest in the business, I did, and the results were not bad!

This pattern combines an embedded reported speech phrase in ‘-(으-)는다’ with the modifier in ‘-는’ followed by ‘것이’ and indicates that whatever the speaker had originally intended, the result in the following clause is the opposite.

Examples:

I had intended to just buy trousers for my little brother, but all I bought was trousers for myself.

We were meaning to leave some food, but little by little we eat up everything.

We meant to make her laugh but ended up making her cry.
(6) Using Indirect Reported Speech for Confirmation and Emphasis

Indirect reported speech is used either to convey the words of another person to a third party, or else to ask for confirmation from one's counterpart when, in the course of a conversation, one misunderstands one's interlocutor. Yet another usage is to allow the speaker to objectivize his or her own actions or state. In this case, the speaker emphasizes the contents of the quoted phrase or sentence. Note also that second-person sentences of this type have the effect of asking one's counterpart for confirmation as to what was just said.

When a noun or noun-like structure precedes ‘말이다’, the effect of this pattern is to repeat yet again that noun, and when this pattern is wielded as a question, the effect is to ask the interlocutor for confirmation. Sometimes a ‘말이다’-type phrase is interspersed between different sentences or sentence constituents with little or no meaning at all, rather like English you know or I mean.

Examples:
언제 말입니까?
When do you mean?
내일 말입니다.
I mean tomorrow.
누가 말이에요?
Who do you mean?
어제 말이에요, 강 선생이 말이에요, 하디 가셨어요.
About yesterday… you know, Mr. Kim — he came and went already.
일하지 않으면 말이에요, 가족들이 말이에요, 고생할 테요.
I mean, if you don't work… you know, your family suffer.

Depending on the sentence type, embedded quotations can end in the final endings ‘(-(으)는)다’, ‘-나’, ‘-(으)라’ or ‘-자’, for this structure, one attaches ‘-고 하는’ to these endings and then deletes from this the sequence ‘-고 하느-’ leaving one with just ‘-Lee’. This structure, too, is used to repeat the quoted sentence or phrase, or else, in questions, to ask for confirmation of something just said.

Examples:
미국으로 아주 가신단 말입니다.
I'm telling you, she's moving to the States for good.
학교에 가지 많고, 놀리 가진 말입니다.
I'm saying let's take off somewhere instead of going to school.
누가 오신단 말이에요?
Are you saying that someone is coming?
요즘 무슨 생각을 그렇게 하시나 말이에요.
I'm asking, what is it you're so hung up on these days?
시간도 없는데, 버스를 타면 말이니까?
We have no time, and you're saying take the bus.
Prefixes and Suffixes

Any language contains a number of affixes which attach to word stems or roots (the main part of a word which expresses the basic lexical meaning) in the course of word formation and modify the meaning somehow. Affixes which attach to the left of a morpheme are called prefixes (접두사), and affixes which attach to the right of a morpheme are called suffixes (접미사). Affixes can be subcategorized in yet another way: delimiting affixes (affixes which simply add meaning) vs. categorial affixes (affixes which change the part of speech of the affixed morpheme). Below we introduce the most commonly used affixes in Korean.

1. Prefixes (접두사)

Prefixes modify the meaning of the morpheme they precede, and all of them are of the delimiting type (that is, they do not change the part of speech of their host). Noun prefixes are similar in their function to adnominals, and verb prefixes are similar in function to adverbs. But whereas adnominals and adverbs can combine more or less freely with nouns and verbs, prefixes are restricted to combining with a limited number of stems.
Examples:

- added, additional, put-on, affixed

Examples:

- 닫물 닫질 엽하다 닫질혼하다 닫시집오다
  barely 20 freshly graduated newly wed newly married

Examples:

- 이제 갃스물난 처녀여서 완장 피어오르는구나!
  Being a young woman of barely twenty years, she is at her peak of beauty!

Examples:

- 아래서 간을 아우러니가 어떻게 안아야 할지 모르겠어요.
  Now that I try it, I have no idea how I’m supposed to hold a newborn baby.

Examples:

- The newlywed bride brought over some ricecakes.

Examples:

- There’s a repeat sign, so here you have to sing it again.
  There’s a repeat sign, so here you have to sing it again.

Try thinking back on your highschool days.
내가 물었는데 왜 물으셨네요요?
I [already] asked, so what the point of asking again?
내가 보기에 이 나무는 되살아나기 힘들 것 같아요.
The way I see it, it’ll be difficult for this tree to come to life again.

Examples:
말면서, 또, 나, 또다시.
dual income, a face-to-face mutual bowing meeting.
말하다, 맞들다, 맞바꾸다.
bring into contact, lift together, barter, trade.
맞서다, 맞잡다, 맞장구치다
confront, help each other, chime in with

Examples:
우린 맞선을 보고 결혼했습니다.
I mean, we married after an initial matchmaking meeting.
مرتب val 떼 어렵게 되어요?
What are they doing sitting there, tete a tete?
어린 것이 형과 맞서서 힘을 거느렸다.
The little fellow says he wants to challenge his big brother to a contest of strength.
그 선물이 마음에 안 들면 우리 맞바꾸자요?
If you don’t like the present, shall we exchange it?
요즘은 맞벌이 부부가 많아 아이들 문제도 심각합니다.
Lately there are so many couples working that the problems with children are quite serious.

예 -
each, every

every: 매년, 매달, 매번, 매사, 매시간
every year, every month, every time, all matters, every hour
매학기
every [academic] term

Examples:
매년 성모를 가는데도 가는 길을 찾기가 힘들어요.
Even though we visit the ancestral grave every year, we have a hard time finding the way.
매달 전기세가 얼마나 뭐니까
How much is your electricity bill every month?
그는 매번 야단맞이도 그 비용을 고치지 못해요.
Even though he catches hell every time, he can’t cure himself of that bad habit.
매사에 무지런한 사람이 오늘은 텐일일까?
So what seems to be the matter with you-know-who who is [normally] so diligent in all manner of things?
오늘은 매시간 줄기만 했어요.
Today I was nodding off every hour.

예 -
vivid, deep, intense (with color adjectives)

Examples:
새까맣다, 샛노랗다, 세철
jet black bright yellow bright red
새까맣다, 새하얗다
vivid blue snow white

Examples:
한국 사람은 머리가 새까맣습니다.
Koreans have jet black hair.
샛노란 옷은 임으니까 너무 눈에 띄다.
You stand out too much in bright yellow clothes.
세월간 구두에는 어떤 옷이 어울릴까요?
What clothes would go well with bright red shoes?
가을 하늘은 놀고 새과 같은색입니다.
The autumn sky is bright blue and high.
담이 새하에서 깐것에서하나로 금방 다리워질 겪니다.
The fence is clean because it is a brilliant white, but it is bound to get dirty right away.

생-

a) raw, unripe, uncooked, green; unhealed;
b) crude, unprocessed, natural; wild; rough (hewn); untrained; untutored; unassimilated;
c) live, living, healthy; not yet dry, undried;
d) real, natural, original, untouched, pristine, raw; unsweetened, unflavored;
e) unreasonable, irrational, arbitrary, needless, uncalled for, etc.

**Examples:**

생굴 생매장 생활 생매주
raw oyster burying alive uncooked rice draft beer
생고생 생곡부 생이별
terrible neglected separation by
하드시프트 왕비 상황

**Examples:**

김장김치에 생굴을 좀 넣으면 맛이 훨씬 낫지요.
The winter kimch tastes much better if you put some raw oysters in.
생매주를 시킬까요? 보통 매주를 시킬까요?
Shall we order draft beer? Or just regular [bottled] beer?
가젠파로 생사람 잡으면 못해요.
It is evil to arrest an innocent man through lies.
능력 있는 사람이 노동자에 가서 생각하고 있어요.
A perfectly talented person is suffering a manual labor job.
남편이 출장은 가서 요즘은 생과부 노릇을 하고 있지만요.
Because my husband is away on business, I’m playing widow for a while.

 Prefixes and Suffixes

- small and round; bare, naked, stripped (down to essentials), out-and-out, bald; essential, important, core; net; real, true-to-life, sure enough; down-to-earth; thorough, complete, whole

**Examples:**

알바 알바생 암약 암상을 알거지
(shelled) rock (medicinal) naked abject
chestnut candy tablet body beggar

**Examples:**

그 알바 찰 민음직스럽군.
That chestnut sure does look tasty.
아이들은 대개 알바를 좋아해.
Kids usually like rock candy.
이 알바는 너무 컸어 먹기와 합들겠는데요.
These tablets are so big it’s hard to swallow them.
알수로 삼갈신을 넘어 온 사람이 많습니다.
There are lots of people who crossed the 38th parallel with nothing but the shirts on their backs.
사업에 실패하여 알거지가 되고 말았어요.
He was left penniless after his business failed.

외-

only, single, lone, one, sole, isolated

**Examples:**

외길, 외나무다리, 외벽, 외아들, 외동
narrow path, a single log bridge, only daughter, only son, somebody alone

**Examples:**

여긴 외길이어서 차가 다니기에는 너무 줄습니다.
This little road is so narrow here that it is hard for a car to get by.
외나무다리에 넣어 있으면 난 어떻게 지나가지?
If you’re sitting on the log bridge, how am I supposed to get by?
그녀는 외래로 귀여움을 독자하고 있어요.
Being an only daughter, she has a monopoly on the cuteness front.
The friend I used to hang out with got married, so now I'm on my own.

Examples:

slight, trivial, insignificant, niggly, piddling, mickey-mouse, minor, slight

Examples:
slight caught tiny hand (small) gravel minor writing change pebble illness
nagging small errand minor jobs fine wrinkle peach fuzz

Examples:

The handwriting is so small that it's hard to read.

Can you make change for a 10,000 won bill?

She never gets sick in a major way, but always has lots of minor ailments.

He says he goes home late because he doesn't like to listen to his mother's nagging.

Most of the small errands are done by the baby of the family.

Examples:

The first step is important.

You study from the first day of the term?

She married somebody she fell in love with at first sight.

One's first love is probably unforgettable for everyone.

Examples:

The first step is important.

You study from the first day of the term?

She married somebody she fell in love with at first sight.

One's first love is probably unforgettable for everyone.

Examples:

The first step is important.

You study from the first day of the term?

She married somebody she fell in love with at first sight.

One's first love is probably unforgettable for everyone.

Examples:

The first step is important.

You study from the first day of the term?

She married somebody she fell in love with at first sight.

One's first love is probably unforgettable for everyone.
Examples:

highest [most] majority highest foremost recently level

Examples:

Her technical skill is the best.

Who is the person standing at the front of their ranks?

I suppose you could say that she is at the cutting edge of fashion.

unripe pepper seasoned veggies greenhorn early apple

Examples:

That little green pepper is quite spicy!

In the spring you have to eat young veggies if you want your appetite to revive.

Examples:

new, of the year; spring; sunny, of the sun

Examples:

They're the first potatoes of the season, so they melt in your mouth.

During ch'usok, they make rice using the first grains of the season.

It's time for the first fruits of the harvest season, but it would appear that they're a bit late this year.

The first greens of the season are softer and tastier, too.

Why don't you try one of these rice cakes made from new rice?
Examples:
한강에 나가 벌써 타던 시절이 언제죠?
It seems so long ago that we used to go out onto the main road and ride our toboggans...

한밤중에 친구가 와서 잠을 깨웠어요.
Somebody phoned in the middle of the night and woke me up.

그 상은 방 한가운데 놓으면 어떨까요?
How about if we put that table right in the middle of the room?

한겨울인데 그렇게 춥지 않아요.
It's not that cold for the middle of the winter.

우리는 한남 한시에 태어난 동갑입니다.
We're the same age — born on the same day at the same time.

alone; without a mate

Examples:
홑몸 황취 황이비 황이머니 황시아머니
single oddnumber widower widow widowed
person mother-in-law

Examples:
гла모도 아닌데 몸을 잘 돌봐야 해요.
[to a pregnant woman] There's two of you inside there, so you should take good care of yourself.

황수는 황수국일, 백수는 백수국일 손을 잡으세요.
Everybody hold hands — odds with odds and evens with evens.

황이머니 이가 사별이라는 말이 있는데 무슨 뜻인지 아세요?
There is an expression which goes: "The widower has four lice" — do

you know what it means?

I'm living with my widowed mother.

Do you have any idea how difficult it is to live with one's widowed mother-in-law?

2. Suffixes (접미사)

There are two kinds of suffix: a) those which merely limit the meaning of the host stem, and b) derivational suffixes which change the host stem into a different part of speech, like noun, verb or adverb. Passives and causatives also belong to the class of derivational suffixes, but we have decided to treat these affixes elsewhere.

Nouns:
-감 -정 -군 -것
material for approx person to the max

-우리가 -끼리 -님 -들
person among likes honorific plural

-생이 -보 -세 -서
person person mode, way polite title

-per, each worth person amongst

-것 -한식 -품 -치

-ing -worth approx, stuff person

-ver -개 -(...) 비 -이

-ing tool -ing the one that...

Verbs
-거리다 -대다 -느냐 다 -반하다
(for mimetics) (for mimetics) emphatic worth doing; can do

-c하다
emphatic
Descriptive Verbs

rather sort of like; worthy characterized is like, suggests of the name

gives/has a feeling of

Adverbs

among, between; for [a duration]

Examples:

부자간에 무슨 문제가 있는 걸까요.
There appears to be some problem between the father and son.

형제간이 얼마나 좋은지 모릅니다.
Those two brothers have such a good relationship!

서울과 부산간의 거리가 어떻게 되죠?
What is the distance between Seoul and Pusan?

여유만 주시면 빌린 돈을 갚겠습니다.
If you give just a few days’ leeway, I’ll pay back the money I borrowed.

장난감 일감 국거립감

toy work; stuff to work soup fixings

사위감 미스리감 신부감

son-in-law daughter-in-law bride

 материал материал материал

신부감 책임감 우호감

groom sense of sense of superiority

부부감 책임감 일어감

sense of servility or inferiority complex

Examples:

오늘 우리 아이 생일이니까 장난감을 사 가지고 가지.
Today is our child’s birthday, so we should buy some toys.

일간이 너무 많아, 해도 해도 끝이 안 나요.
We have so much work to do, that work as we might, there is no end to it.

좋은 미스리감이 있으면 좋겠네요.
If you know any good potential daughter-in-laws, please act as an intermediary for us.

우리 회사에는 자신있게 소개할 만한 신부감이 많아요.
In my company, there are plenty of potential wives that I could introduce to you in all confidence.

그 분은 책임감이 강해서 저렇게 늦게까지 일하고 있어요.
She is working late like that because she has such a strong sense of responsibility.

-거리다/-하다

does repeatedly, continuously; does and does; keeps doing, does on (and on), does (keeps doing) it away; does again and again, does over and over again

Examples:
The trees have grown in rather nice and thick.  
주 oferta  완전히 뒷배요.  
Just look at that high sky.  
동그라미를 커다랗게 그리서 무얼 하라고 합니까?  
What is it you intend to do by drawing such a largish circle?  
전란한 나무 가지 하나 가져다 무슨 것이요?  
Could you please bring me a longish branch?  
하리가 너무 가느다란해서 어디 험을 쓰겠어요?  
Your waist is so slender — where do you find strength for anything?

This suffix attaches to nouns and creates descriptive verbs.

**Examples:**
학생답다, 여자답다, 군인답다, 신사답다, 교육자답다

**Examples:**
학생은 학생답게 행동해야 한다.
Students should behave like students.
그녀는 여자답다와 비교가 하나도 없어요.
There's nothing ladylike about her.
군인답다고 하면 적격하고 용감한 것을 말합니다.
When one says 'soldier-like', one means brave and courageous.
신사답지 않게 여성에게 그런 행동을 하다네...
To think that he would do something so ungentlemanly to a woman...
그는 교육자답게 조언을 잘 해 주셨습니다.
True to her status as an educator, she gave him some words of advice.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefixes and Suffixes</th>
<th>415</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| 금실거리다 | 기웃거리다 | 감탁거리다 |
| bend, bow | peek, tilt, peer | blink |
| 고분거리다 | 태울거리다 | 두근거리다 |
| wind, zigzag | stutter | palpitate, throb |
| 반짝거리다 | 목无论是其li | 바깥거리다 |
| shimmer, sparkle | bustle, jostle | protrude, stick out |
| 열려거리다 | 참가거리다 | 종열거리다 |
| keep showing up | gibber, chatter | mumble |
| 출렁거리다 | 두들거리다 | 혼탁거리다 |
| slush | grumble, grouse | pant, breathe hard |
| 왜근거리다 | 호느적거리다 |
| flare up | sway, waver |

| Examples: |
| If you go to work beneath somebody else, do you always have to be bowing and scraping? |
| Some stranger was peering into our house. |
| He must feel uneasy about something, as he keeps blinking his eyes. |
| Stop stammering, and try to speak slowly. |
| The Namdaemun Market is teeming with people. |

| 다란다 |
| is rather, quite, sort of (sorta), kind of ( kinda); is...ish |

This suffix attaches only to descriptive verbs.

**Examples:**
군다랗다, 높다랗다, 카다랗다, 길다랗다, 가느다랗다
rather thick, rather high, rather large, rather long, rather slender

| Examples: |
| The suffix attaches only to descriptive verbs. |

| IRONICAL | saying~thinking~feeling that it is~does |
| Example: |

| Examples: |
He struck out ahead of the others, claiming he would take care of it himself.
He claimed he would fix it up, but instead he made it worse.
I thought you took it away claiming you would do it by yourself — so why have you brought it back?
All puffed up that he earned a bit of money, he is spending it like crazy.
He’s walking around with his shoulders all pushed back, pretending to be strong.

This suffix attaches to certain nouns and creates descriptive verbs.

Examples:
자유롭다: amazing, harmful, ingenious, wise
이롭다: advantageous, fragrant

Examples:
어디에도 없어서 자유롭게 살고 싶다.
I want to live free, without being tied down anywhere.
The Rockie Mountains are truly awe-inspiring and mysterious.
Why do you smoke, when it is so harmful to your body?
It wasn’t my original intention, but somehow (and in an ingeniously contrived way) I ended up disappointing her.
We’re so proud of our daughter! Who have thought she get the gold medal?!
He is staring at me with a worried expression.

I told her off carefully, lest I hurt her feelings.

He is so fickle, that I never know best how to accommodate him.

feel~ gives~ has a feeling of

This suffix attaches to abstract nouns denoting emotions or feelings and creates descriptive verbs.

**Examples**:

- 미심쩍다: questionable
- 수상쩍다: suspicious, "fishy"

**Examples**:

- She looks embarrassed, since she was the one who screwed up.
- I was a little dubious that he was the person in charge here, so I asked.

If anybody suspicious shows up, contact me at once.

---

**Reference**

**Punctuation**

Figure 28 below presents the sentence punctuation symbols most widely used in Korean.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>.</td>
<td>마침표</td>
<td>Signals the end of a declarative, imperative or suggestion sentence. Also used for abbreviations and dates.</td>
<td>철수가 온다. 가라, 같이 공부합시다. R.O.K. U.S.A. 1995. 2. 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>,</td>
<td>콤마</td>
<td>-with coordinate or subordinate clauses: -for enumeration of nouns or phrases: -for conjunctors or conjunctive phrases: -after independent expressions: -after appositives:</td>
<td>한국말은 어렵고, 시간이 많이 걸린다. 공책, 연필, 가방을 샀다. 그러나, 그는 오지 않았다. 아, 숙제를 잃었군! 고독, 그것은 마음에 느낄 수 있는 정취다.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Punctuation</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>?</td>
<td>Question mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>!</td>
<td>Exclamation mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>:</td>
<td>(semi-)colon</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>Quotation mark</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>)</td>
<td>-when inserting parentheses annotations of words or phrases</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>......</td>
<td>-to show ellipses -to indicate silence</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Question mark**
Signals the end of an interrogative sentence.
When a sentence contains more than one question form, only one question mark is used, at the end.

**Exclamation mark**
- to express surprise or exclamation:
  - when calling people or animals:

**Colon**
- when listing examples, use (:)
- when giving an explanation, use (:)
- for time telling, use (:)
- for chapter and verse, use (:)

**Quotation mark**
- when citing or quoting
  - for emphasis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Punctuation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8월 15일 (광복절)에……</td>
<td>-when inserting an explanation or other content</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>한국 사람이니가?</td>
<td>Is this Korean?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>공부를 할 것인가, 돈을 벌 것인가?</td>
<td>Is one going to study, and is one going to earn money?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>날씨가 좋구나! 아!</td>
<td>It's a nice day!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>철수야!</td>
<td>Cheolsoo!</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>옥רא : 콜라, 사이다</td>
<td>The syrup is cola, sir.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>자전거 : 바퀴가 두 개 담긴 차</td>
<td>The bicycle is a two-wheeled vehicle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>오전 10 : 30</td>
<td>10:30 AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>창세기 5 : 6</td>
<td>Genesis 5:6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Korean</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>날씨가 참 좋은데……</td>
<td>It's a nice day, isn't it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;왜 거짓말을 했니?&quot; &quot;……&quot;,</td>
<td>&quot;Why did you lie?&quot; &quot;……&quot;,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Recommendations for Further Reading

The original Korean edition of this work includes a list of additional references, most of which are in Korean and most of which reflect the Yonsei University's traditional Korean school grammar. Since most foreign learners of Korean are unlikely to read Korean grammatical treatises in Korean until they reach a very high level of competency, I include below an annotated listing of works in English which students may find helpful as they, inevitably, leave the beaten track of textbooks and formal classroom learning, and venture into the no-man's land of self-study through which all students must pass before reaching any reasonably high level of proficiency in Korean. I have also included one or two Korean works which I have found particularly useful in my own study of Korean.


Given the rather chaotic approach to vocabulary found in most textbooks available today, this handbook is a useful tool for students trying to increase their vocabulary in a more systematic fashion. The division of Korean vocabulary into two sections -- Sino-Korean and pure Korean -- should be helpful for students who have already embarked on the study of Chinese characters in their Korean readings. Example sentences for the vocabulary introduced would have made this book even more useful, but students can find such examples in some of the most recently published Korean-Korean dictionaries.

All learners of Korean are treated to a barrage of praise and adulation about the Korean script and the circumstances of its invention in the 15th century, but it was difficult until recently to find level-headed treatments of the subject in good, well-edited English prose. This volume brings together highly readable and interesting essays by a number of scholars from Korea and the United States, and should make clear why all that praise and adulation for the Korean script is so richly deserved.


and


Inspired by the now out-of-print Beginning Korean by Martin, Chang and Lee, these new textbooks offer an introduction to the fundamental structures of colloquial Korean in a way that clarifies many of the mysteries and unanswered questions that haunt learners of Korean using other textbooks on the market. They should prove useful review for any advanced student of the language, wherever they may have first learned Korean.


Professor Lee’s coverage is rather selective and incomplete, making this work less than the ‘grammar’ it claims to be (it also lacks an index), but those areas of Korean grammar which he covers are handled cleverly and with great insight. Moreover, the examples are all in Korean script, making this book readily accessible to most learners.


This mammoth work is the result of over forty years’ work in Korean linguistics. Do not be put off by the Yale romanization — this transliteration system is easily learned, and the initial investment of time and effort in learning Martin’s system soon yields a rich payback in the wealth of information and detail, both synchronic and diachronic, to be found in this book. Just remember, it is a reference grammar, not a textbook.


Part of the Routledge ‘Descriptive Grammars’ series, this work of nearly 600 pages is a highly competent and informative sketch of Korean grammar. This book is especially good on Korean syntax and pragmatics, but the lack of an index of grammatical forms makes it rather difficult to use as a reference tool. Rumor has it that the book is already out of print, but it is well worth the hunt. Note that all forms are in Yale romanization (another good reason to learn this system of transliteration!).


At nearly 1600 pages, this monumental work contains a wealth of descriptive information and theoretical analyses of Korean grammar. The book has extensive indices and an excellent bibliography, and is somewhat unusual in that it is informed by wide reading not only in traditional Korean grammar, but also in general linguistics as practiced in Europe and North America. Not for the light-hearted, but probably the best place to go for information on Korean structure in Korean, and a bargain at 50,000 won.
Recommendations for Further Reading

Dictionaries: Korean–English


A reprint in smaller format of the long out-of-print Korean–English Dictionary published by Yale University Press, this work recently went out of print in Korea, but can still be found in bookshops and at the publisher’s head office in Seoul. This dictionary contains much useful grammatical information (all of which is also incorporated into Martin’s 1992 grammar), and is the only major Korean–English dictionary ever produced that actually has the needs of the English-speaking learner in mind. Any serious student of Korean should own a copy.

Dictionaries: Korean–Korean

Although most serious students of Korean can probably postpone, almost indefinitely, the reading of Korean grammatical works written in Korean by Koreans without any lasting harm to their Korean ability, there comes a time, once one has stepped out into the no-man’s land, when every student must make frequent and regular reference to Korean–Korean dictionaries. The 1990s has witnessed a virtual explosion of publication activity in this field, and here we list just two of the many new and important Korean–Korean dictionaries on the market. Unless one has easy access to reference works like these through a university library, it is probably best to bite the bullet and buy at least one of them.


남영성 has already established himself as Korea’s lexicographer par excellence with his 1987 우리말 분류 사전 (Dictionary of Korean Semantic Categories — 성립당 출판사) and his 1995 국어 응해 사전 (Dictionary of Korean Stylistic Examples). The 훈국어사전 is particularly noteworthy for its combination of excellent definitions with useful and interesting linguistic and cultural information. This work is especially good for its advice on style and usage, and for its examples from and separate entries for famous works of Korean literature and folk songs.


The result of years of work by a cast of thousands at Korea’s oldest and most venerable linguistic society, this dictionary contains 450,000 entries and is the largest Korean dictionary published to date. The definitions are clear and concise, and include good example sentences, often from literature. The separate dialect and pre-modern Korean sections are excellent. This bulky work has been published in a few different formats, and you are well-advised to purchase the edition that splits it up into three different volumes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>〈ㄱ〉</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>가</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>간애</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>갓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>같다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거나 간애</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거나 말거나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거늘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거늘 하늘며</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거니 말거나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거니와</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거니하나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거든</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거든 (よ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거끝한</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>거려다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>견</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>견때</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>견마는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계품</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계시리</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>계하나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>결 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>것은</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>것은 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>것은이</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>겪</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>격구나</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>격</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 계시다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 나나까</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 낫다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 낫면</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 나서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고는</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 말다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 보다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고서라도</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고서야</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 설다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 설어하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고야 말다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 있다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고자</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 해서</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>고 운하다</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>과</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관계</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>관계도</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-구나 227
-구나 일다 355
-군 227
-그래도 134
-그래서 132
-그러나 130
-그러니까 134
-그리면 131
-그러면서 135
-그렇게 132
-그림자 없이도 136
-그리고 129
-기 319
-기 320
-기 321
-기 322
-기 323
-기 324
-기 326
-기 326
-기로 326
-기로시녀 328
-기 마련이다 331
-기반 324
-기 잡다 320
-기 조사 327
-기에 43, 324
-기에 방정 43
-기에 위치하여 334
-기에 위치시 334
-기 일치하는 330
-기 전에 333
-기 밖이 없다 329
-기 원이 없다 330
-길 65
-결 319
-결래 328
-결래 방정 43
-결 29
-결 66
-끝 66
-끝에 66
-〈L〉
-,% 317
-% 229
-% 254
-% 254
-% 27
-% 21
-% 26
-% 간단하게 27
-% 것 22
-% 거하여 65
-% 일 29
-% 끝에 66
-% 끝에 189
-논가 하다 255
-논가 하면 254
-논 가 224
-논 금 보너 27
-논 금 21
-논 것 같다 26
-논 것 같던 27
-논 것이라는 22
-논 관계로 65
-(논)구나 227
-(논)구 227
-논 길이다 66
-논 길에 29
-논 남에는 67
-논다 374
-논다(으) 392
-논다 고 그래(으) 389
-논다 기에 325
-논다는 것이 395
-논다는 대로 35
-논다니요(으) 393
-논다든지 390
-논다지 않습니까? 392
-논단 말이다 397
-논담 230
-논담거리 238
-논다니나 383
-논담이나 383
-논대 34
-논대사야 263
-논 대신 36
-논대요 384
-논대 264
-논대도 265
-논대도에 265
-논 도중에 69
-논 도안에 37
-논 등 37
-논 듣 마는 듣 39
-논 듣어 38
-논 듣시다 40
-논 듣하다 39
-논 마당에 69
-논 만큼 42
-논 모양이다 70
-논 바 44
-논 바람에 71
-논 반면 71
-논 벌이다 72
-논 벌이 있다 72
-논 사이에 74
-논 샐치다 76
-논 수가 있다 50
-논 양 51
-논 일에 76
-논 정도 77
-논 줄 알다 54
-논 지 알다 56
-논 치하다 58
-논 체하다 58
-논 벌이 59
-논 등에 79
-논 폭 63
-논 하 64
-논 니 267
-논 니까 265
-논 면 264
-논 면 42, 268
-논 맛경 43

<보>
-irregular verbs 109
-다(가) 보너 272
-다(가) 보먼 271
-다가 269
-다가는 270
-다가도 270
-다랗다 414
-다 못해 274
-다 빠이나 48
-다순 처더라도 275
-다시피 276
-답 162
-답다 415
-답시고 415
-대다 413
대로 32
대신 36
-더니 277
-더니만 279
-더라도 280
-던 318
-던가(으) 229
-던결 226
-던 끝에 66
-던데 281
-던 것에 52
-던지 284
-던 400
-던(으) 231
-도 167
-도록 16, 285
-도록 하다 286

도중 69
-도중에 69
-도안 37
-도- 401
-도 287
-도 37
-도지 289
-도지 말든지 360
-도 38
-도 290
-따름 32
-때 68

<보>
-irregular verbs 113
-로 318
-로 (으) 233
-로 거예요 195
-로 전가요 23
-로 결 224
-로 결 (그랬다) 225
-로 결요 24
-로 결 21
-로 결 같다 26
-로 결 같으면 26
-로 결 않다 25
-로 결이다 22
-로 제예요 226
-로 경 29
-로 까 말까 223
-로 까 싶다 355
-로 까요? 221
-로 까 하다 224
-로 나와가 없다 31
-로 대로 33
-로 동 37
-로 드는 38
-로 드 멜치 39
-로 드 멜치도 40
-로 드 멜치도 38
-로 드 멜치도 39
-로 따름이다 32
-로 배 68
-로라 231
-로라치면 291
-로라 말라(하다) 232
-로라 173
-로레(으) 233
-로라가 있다 40
-로 램 42
-로 모양이다 70
-로 무언 44
-로 바 44
-로 바에야 45
-로 벌하다 73
-로 벌했다 45
-로 봐 그리고 47,292
-로 봐 그리고 47
-로 봐 만 아니라 47
-로 봐 46
-로 사야 74
-로 상抄袭 355
-로 생산 75
-로 생치다 76
-로 수가 있어야죠 50
-로 수보 29
-로 수 있는 대로 35
-로 수 있다 49
-로 양 51
-로 적 53
-로 정도 77
-로 줄 알다 53
-로 지명이다 78
-로지리도 293
-로지 말치 360
-로지 말치 55
-로지연정 294
-로집대 294
-로 참이다 56
-로 태니가 60
-로 테발 62
-로 전야 60
-로 전지로 62
-로 변례 61
-로보고 + Reporting verb(Phrase) 386
-로보고 + Quotational Clause 388
-로보고 요? 393
-로나요? 393
-로도 169
-로는데 171
-로사 172
-로니가? 382
-로니다 382
-로십시오 173
-로라면 158
-로 (으) 385
-로? 233
-로 가다 342
-로 돌아 342
-로 오다 342
-로 거듭 243, 297
-로 고 295
-로 고하다 296
-로나 298
-로나와 299
-로나가 272
-로나가 말고 273
-로나라 참이다 57
-로무나 234
-로먼만 301
-로 면 234
-로 포 154
-로 포 288
-로 보나 257
-로 렇 157
-로 렇 157
-로 볼다 416
-로-irregular verbs 110
-로 146
-를 달라고 379
-리 40
-리 126
-리라 234

〈□〉
-□ 334
-□에 336
-□으로 306
-□으로써 306
-□을 335
-□이 335
-□마다 174

마당 69
-마저 175
-말 41
-말 175
-말 41
-말하다 417
-말하다 396
-말청 43
-말 402
-말 402
-말마다 174
-말 304
-말 302
-말서 303
-말서도 304
-말하 303
-말할 70
-말무 44
-말므로 306

〈□〉
-□ 156
-□-irregular verbs 108
바 44
바람 70
-바에 176
-바에 71
-바 72
-보고 177
-보나 178
-부러 178
-부러-까지 179
-부러-까지 46
irregular verbs 106

-있(있, 있)던지 184
-있(있, 있)으면 싶다 356
-에 149
-에게 149
-에게서 152
-에게 -을/를 -어(아, 여)드리라고 379
-에게 -을/를 -어(아, 여)주라고 379
-해(다)가 160
-에서 144, 152
-에서부터 180
-에 158
-와 158
-와 405
-(으) 느 317
-(으) 느가 보다 229
-(으) 느가 하다 255
-(으) 느가 하면 254
-(으) 느결 224
-(으) 느관계로 66
-(으) 느문에 66
-(으) 느대로 33
-(으) 느대신 36
-(으) 느대 264
-(으) 느대로 265
-(으) 느동 37
-(으) 느들 282
-(으) 느등하다 40
-(으) 느등이 38
-(으) 느등하다 39
-(으) 느 만들 42
-(으) 느 모양이다 70
-(으) 느 바 44
-(으) 느 받면에 71
-(으) 느 받보다 72
-(으) 느 사이에 74
-(으) 느 생이다 75
-(으) 느 생지다 76
-(으) 느 수가 있다 50
-(으) 느 양 51
-(으) 느 일이 있다 76
-(으) 느 적이 있다 52
-(으) 느 정도 77
-(으) 느 줄 알다 54
-(으) 느 지 54
-(으) 느 지 알다 55
-(으) 느 제 57
-(으) 느 척하다 58
-(으) 느 척하다 58
-(으) 느 맞 59
-(으) 느 판이다 63
-(으) 느 후 80
-(으) 느나 256
-(으) 느나 -(으) 느 258
-(으) 느나 -(으) 느나 257
-(으) 느나마 259
-(으) 느나 마나 258
-(으) 느니 16, 267
-(으) 느나가 265
-(으) 느나 만들 42, 268
-(으) 느나 방정 42
-(으) 느로 318
-(으) 느 거예요 195
-(으) 느로 정 225
-(으) 느로 걸(그랬다) 225
- (으) 를 것 있다 23
- (으) 를 게요 226
- (으) 를 까까다 223
- (으) 를 말하다 357
- (으) 를 깨요? 221
- (으) 를 까 한다 224
- (으) 를 대로 33
- (으) 를 둔 37
- (으) 를 둨 말 둨 (하다) 39
- (으) 를 둘다 40
- (으) 를 둔이 38
- (으) 를 둨하다 39, 340
- (으) 를 둨하다 68
- (으) 를 둨하다 231
- (으) 를 둨하다 291
- (으) 를 둨하다 293
- (으) 를 둨하다 361
- (으) 를 둨하여 53
- (으) 를 둨하여 294
- (으) 를 둨하여 294
- (으) 를 둨하여 60
- (으) 를 둨하여 62
- (으) 를 둨하여 61
- (으) 를 둨하여 336
- (으) 를 둨하여 306
- (으) 를 둨하여 306
- (으) 를 둨하여 355
- (으) 를 둨하여 355
- (으) 를 둨하여 16, 304
- (으) 를 둨하여 302
- (으) 를 둨하여 304
- (으) 를 둨하여 179
- (으) 를 둨하여 303
- (으) 를 둨하여 302
- (으) 를 둨하여 306
- (으) 를 둨하여 235
- (으) 를 둨하여 163
- (으) 를 둨하여 288
- (으) 를 둨하여 161
- (으) 를 둨하여 181
- (으) 를 둨하여 181
- (으) 를 둨하여 158
- (으) 를 둨하여 99
- (으) 를 둨하여 144, 148
- (으) 를 둨하여 312
- (으) 를 둨하여 76
- (으) 를 둨하여 101

- (으) 를 수가 있어야 50
- (으) 를 수록 292
- (으) 를 수 있다 49
- (으) 를 양으로 51
- (으) 를 지 52
- (으) 를 정도 77
- (으) 를 중 다 53
- (으) 를 지정하다 78
- (으) 를 지리라도 293
- (으) 지리지 53
- (으) 지리지 294
- (으) 지리지 294
- (으) 지리지 60
- (으) 지리지 60
- (으) 지리지 62
- (으) 지리지 62
- (으) 지리지 61
- (으) 지리지 336
- (으) 지리지 306
- (으) 지리지 306
- (으) 지리지 355
- (으) 지리지 355
- (으) 지리지 16, 304
- (으) 지리지 302
- (으) 지리지 304
- (으) 지리지 179
- (으) 지리지 303
- (으) 지리지 302
- (으) 지리지 306
- (으) 지리지 235
- (으) 지리지 163
- (으) 지리지 295
- (으) 지리지 295
- (으) 지리지 146
- (으) 지리지 379
- (으) 지리지 148
- (으) 지리지 124, 144, 148
- (으) 지리지 169
- (으) 지리지 184
- (으) 지리지 184
- (으) 지리지 164
- (으) 지리지 166
- (으) 지리지 168
- (으) 지리지 173
- (으) 지리지 + Reporting Verb (Phras) 386
- (으) 지리지 392
- (으) 지리지 393
- (으) 지리지 169
- (으) 지리지 171
- (으) 지리지 171
- (으) 지리지 182
- (으) 지리지 283
- (으) 지리지 283
- (으) 지리지 173
- (으) 지리지 159
- (으) 지리지 300
- (으) 지리지 288
- (으) 지리지 161
- (으) 지리지 181
- (으) 지리지 181
- (으) 지리지 158
- (으) 지리지 99
- (으) 지리지 144, 148
- (으) 지리지 312
- (으) 지리지 76
- (으) 지리지 101

- (으) 를 보다 273
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Progressive Tense</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Korean Cardinal Numerals</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pure Korean Ordinal Numerals</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quotation Particles</td>
<td>380</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular Verbs</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reporting Verbs</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retentive Auxiliary Verbs</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sentential Adverbs</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Causatives</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Form</td>
<td>213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short Passives</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple Sentences</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sino-Korean Numerals</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sino-Korean Ordinal Numerals</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speech Levels</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject Honorification</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject Particle</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffixes</td>
<td>411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminative Auxiliary Verbs</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Coupla °라다</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Verb 일다</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Adverbs</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verb Conjugation</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative Particles</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vowel Harmony</td>
<td>209</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>